

# **OWNER HANDBOOK**





# WHY CHOOSING GENUINE PARTS

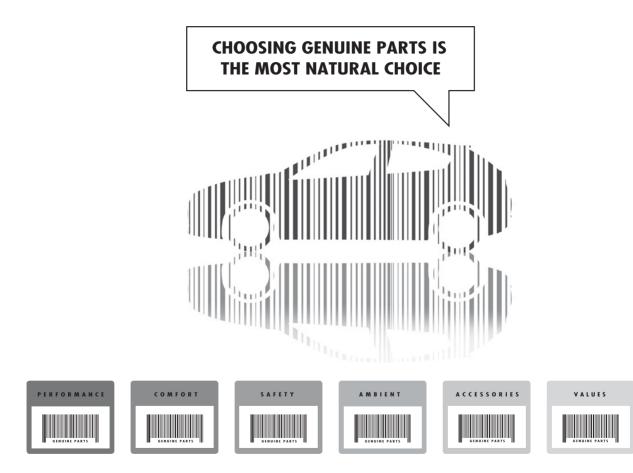
We really know your car because we invented, designed and built it: we really know every single detail. At **Alfa Romeo Service authorised workshops** you can find technicians directly trained by us, offering quality and professionalism for all service operations.

Alfa Romeo workshops are always close to you for the regular servicing operations, season checks and practical recommendations by our experts.

# With Alfa Romeo Genuine Parts you keep the reliability, comfort and performance features of your new car unchanged in time: that's why you bought it for.

Always ask for Genuine Parts for the components used on our cars; we recommend them because they come from our steady commitment in research and development of highly innovative technologies.

For all these reasons: rely on Genuine Parts, because they are the only ones designed by Alfa Romeo for your car.



#### HOW TO RECOGNISE GENUINE PARTS

To recognise a **Genuine Part**, **check that the component bears our brands**, always clearly visible on Genuine Parts, from the braking system to windscreen wipers, from shock absorbers to pollen filter. All **Genuine Parts** undergo **strict controls**, both during design and manufacturing stages, by specialists using **vanguard materials**, to **test the component reliability**. This to guarantee **performance** and **safety** for you and your passengers on board, for a long time. Always ask for and make sure a **Genuine Part** has been used.



#### Dear Customer,

we would like to congratulate and thank you for choosing Alfa Romeo.

We have written this handbook to help you get to know all the features of your car and use it in the best possible way. Please read it all the way through before taking your car on the road for the first time.

Here you will find information, tips and important warnings regarding use of your car and how to achieve the best performance from the technological features of your Alfa Romeo. The handbook also provides a description of special features and tips as well as essential information for correct care, maintenance, safety of car driving and use and preservation of your Alfa Romeo over time.

Carefully read the warnings and indications marked with the following symbols:



personal safety;



car safety;



environmental protection.

The enclosed Warranty Booklet lists the services that Alfa Romeo offers to its Customers:

□ the Warranty Certificate with terms and conditions for maintaining its validity;

□ the range of additional services available to Alfa Romeo Customers.

We are confident that these instructions will help you become familiar with your new car and the Alfa Romeo after-sales staff who will be at your service.

Enjoy reading. Happy motoring!

This Owner Handbook describes all versions of the Alfa Giulietta; please consider only the information relevant to your version, engine and configuration. All data contained in this publication are purely indicative. Fiat Group Automobiles can modify the specifications of the vehicle model described in this publication at any time, for technical or marketing purposes. For further information, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

# **VERY IMPORTANT**

#### REFUELLING



**Petrol engines**: only refuel with unleaded petrol with octane rating (RON) not less than 95 in compliance with the European Standard EN228.

**Diesel engines**: refuel only with diesel fuel conforming to the European specification EN590. The use of other products or mixtures may damage the engine beyond repair and consequently invalidate the warranty, due to the damage caused.

#### **STARTING THE ENGINE**



**Petrol engines**: make sure that the handbrake is engaged, set the gear lever to neutral, fully depress the clutch without depressing the accelerator, then turn the ignition key to AVV and release it as soon as the engine has started.

**Diesel engines**: turn the ignition key to MAR and wait for the warning lights  $\bigcirc$  and  $\bigcirc$  to go out; then turn the ignition key to AVV and release it as soon as the engine has started.

#### PARKING ON FLAMMABLE MATERIAL



The catalytic converter develops high temperatures during operation. Do not park the car on grass, dry leaves, pine needles or other flammable material: fire hazard.

#### **RESPECTING THE ENVIRONMENT**



The car is fitted with a system that carries out a continuous diagnosis of the emission-related components in order to help protect the environment.

#### **ELECTRICAL ACCESSORIES**



If after having purchased the car you decide to add accessories requiring electricity (with the risk of gradually draining the battery), contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services. They can calculate the overall electric requirement and check that the car's electric system can support the required load.

#### **CODE** card

(for versions/markets, where provided)



Keep it in a safe place, not in the car. We recommend that you always carry the electronic code provided on the CODE card with you, in case you need to perform an emergency start.

#### SCHEDULED SERVICING



Correct maintenance of the car is essential for ensuring that it maintains its performance and its safety features, its environmental friendliness and low running costs for a long time to come.

#### THE OWNER MANUAL CONTAINS...

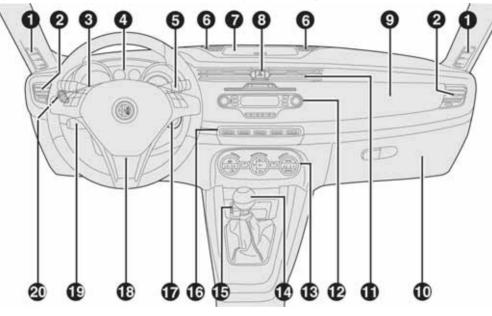


...important information, advice and warnings for correct use, driving safety and maintenance of your car over time. Particular attention should be paid to information marked with the following symbols: (personal safety) (environmental protection) (car integrity).

# **GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR**

### DASHBOARD

The presence and position of the controls, instruments and indicators may vary according to the different versions.



#### fig. 1

1. Fixed vent for directing air to the side windows 2. Adjustable air vent 3. Exterior light control lever 4. Instrument panel 5. Windscreen wiper/rear window wiper/trip computer control lever 6. Adjustable upper vents 7. Radio navigator display (for versions/markets, where provided) 8. Hazard warning lights 9. Passenger front airbag 10. Glove compartment 11. Adjustable central air vents 12. Car radio (for versions/markets, where provided) 13. Heating/ventilation/climate control system controls 14. Gear lever 15. "Alfa DNA" system 16. Control buttons: fog lights/rear fog lights, Start&Stop system (for versions/markets, where provided), door lock/unlock, AFS light on/off (for versions/markets, where provided) 17. Ignition device 18. Driver front airbag 19. Cruise Control lever (for versions/markets, where provided) 20. Headlight alignment corrector (for versions/markets, where provided) and Set Up Menu access buttons.

STARTING AND DRIVING IN AN EMERGENCY

**GETTING TO** 

SAFETY

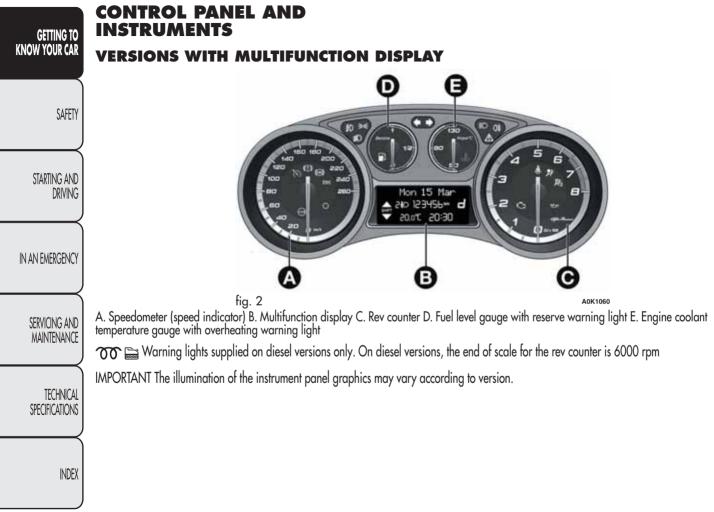
KNOW YOUR CAR

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

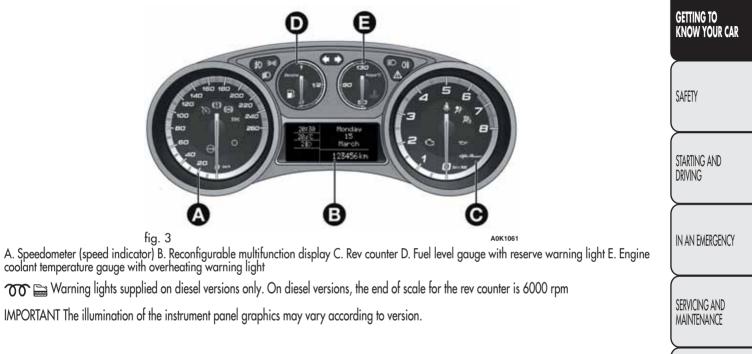
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

A0K0074



#### VERSIONS WITH RECONFIGURABLE MULTIFUNCTIONAL DISPLAY



INDEX

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

#### **SPEEDOMETER (SPEED INDICATOR)**

This shows the speed of the car.

# **REV COUNTER**

This indicates the engine rpm.

# FUEL LEVEL GAUGE

This shows the amount of fuel left in the tank.

- 0 tank empty.
- 1 tank full

**GETTING TO** 

SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL

**SPECIFICATIONS** 

DRIVING

KNOW YOUR CAR

The warning light in the gauge lights up when there are only 8 to 10 litres of fuel remaining in the tank; in the event of this happening, refuel at the earliest opportunity.

#### ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

This gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant. The warning light in the gauge lights up to indicate an increase in coolant temperature; in the event of this happening, switch off the engine and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

# WARNING LIGHTS ON PANEL

# General warnings

The warning lights switch on together with a dedicated message and/or acoustic signal where appropriate.

These indications are concise and precautionary and, as such, must not be considered as exhaustive and/or alternative to the information contained in this Owner Handbook, which you are recommended to read carefully in all cases.

Always refer to the information in this section in the event of a failure indication.



# Low brake fluid level (red)

Turning the key to the MAR position illuminates the warning light, but it should switch off after a few seconds.

The warning light (or symbol on the display) comes on when the level of the brake fluid in the reservoir falls below the minimum level, possibly due to leaks in the circuit.

The display will show the dedicated message.

# Handbrake on (red)

Turning the key to the MAR position illuminates the warning light, but it should switch off after a few seconds.

The warning light (or symbol on the display) switches on when the handbrake is engaged. If the car is moving the buzzer will also sound.

IMPORTANT If the warning light comes on when the vehicle is in motion, check that the handbrake is not engaged.



#### EBD failure

The simultaneous switching on of the (①) (red) and (④) (amber) warning lights with the engine on, indicates either a failure of the EBD system or that the system is not available. In this case, the rear wheels may suddenly lock and the vehicle may swerve when braking sharply.

Drive with extreme caution straight to the nearest Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the system checked.

The display will show the dedicated message.



### **ABS FAILURE (amber)**

Turning the key to the MAR position illuminates the warning light, but it should switch off after a few seconds.

The warning light (or symbol on the display) lights up when the system is inefficient. Under these circumstances the braking system will work as normal without the extra performance offered by the ABS system.

Drive with caution and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

The display will show the dedicated message.



#### Brake pad wear (amber)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The warning light (or symbol on the display) switches on when the front and rear brake pads are worn. In this situation, replace as soon as possible.

The display will show the dedicated message.



# Airbag failure (red)

Turning the key to the MAR position illuminates the warning light, but it should switch off after a few seconds.

The warning light stays on constantly if there is a failure in the airbag system.

The display will show the dedicated message.



If, when the key is turned to MAR, the first warning light does not come on or if it stays on with the vehicle in motion (together with the message on the display)

there could be a failure in the restraint systems; under these circumstances the airbags or pretensioners may not be triggered in the event of an accident or, more rarely, they could be triggered accidentally. Before proceeding, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the system checked immediately. GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS



The failure of the \* warning light is indicated by the flashing, for more than the normal 4 seconds, of the front passenger airbag deactivated warning light \* . In addition, the airbag system automatically disables the airbags on the passenger's side (front airbag and side bags for versions/markets, where provided). In this case, the \* warning light may not indicate a fault in the restraint systems. Before proceeding, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the system checked immediately.

# C C Pass bags

#### Passenger side airbag/side bags deactivated (amber)

The 🍂 warning light switches on when the front passenger side airbag and side bag are disabled.

With front passenger airbag on, when the ignition key is turned to MAR, the  $\approx$  warning light switches on constantly for several seconds, flashes for another few seconds and then should switch off.

A failure of the 2 warning light is indicated by the warning light switching on. In addition, the airbag system automatically disables the airbags on the passenger's side (front and side bags where provided). Before proceeding, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the system checked immediately.



# Seat belts not fastened (red)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The warning light remains on steadily with the car at stationary and the driver's seat belt not correctly fastened.

The warning light will flash and a buzzer will sound if the vehicle is in motion and the front seat belts are not correctly fastened.

Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services if you wish to permanently deactivate the SBR (Seat Belt Reminder) system buzzer. The system can be reactivated using the Set-up Menu.



### Low battery charge (red)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

When the ignition key is turned to MAR, the warning light switches on but should switch off as soon as the engine is started (with the engine idling, a brief delay is acceptable).

Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services if the warning light (or symbol on the display) remains on or flashes.



#### **Dual Pinion active steering** failure (red)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

This warning light switches on when the ignition key is turned to MAR, but it should switch off after a few seconds

If the warning light (or symbol on the display) remains on, you may not have steering assistance and the effort required to operate the steering wheel could be notably increased; steering is, however, possible.

In this case, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

The display will show the dedicated message.

IMPORTANT After the battery is disconnected, the steering must be initialised. The warning light switches on to indicate this. To carry out this procedure, simply turn the steering wheel all the way from one end to the other or drive in a straight line for about a hundred metres.



# **CONSTANTLY ON:** Low engine oil pressure (red)

### **FLASHING: Engine oil deteriorated**

(for versions/markets, where provided - red)

When the key is turned to MAR the warning light comes on, but should go out as soon as the engine is started.

#### 1. Low engine oil pressure

The warning light switches on constantly together (for versions/ markets, where provided) with a message on the display when the system detects that the engine oil pressure is too low.



If the two warning light turns on when driving (on some versions, together with the message on the display), stop the car immediately and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

### 2. Engine oil deteriorated

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The warning light will start to flash together with the specific message on the display (for versions/markets, where provided).

Depending on the versions, the warning light flashing modes are as follows:

□ for 1 minute every two hours;

□ cycles of 3 minutes with intervals with the warning light off for 5 seconds until the oil is changed.

After the first indication, at each engine start-up the warning light will continue flashing as described above until the oil is changed. The display shows a dedicated message (for versions/markets, where provided) together with the warning light. The flashing of this warning light should not be considered as a fault; it informs the customer that the oil needs to be changed following normal car use. Remember that the deterioration of the engine oil is accelerated by:

I mainly town use of the car which makes the DPF regeneration process more frequent;

**GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS



□ use of the car for short drives, in which the engine does not have time to reach its regular operating temperature;

repeated interruption of the regeneration process, signalled by the DPF warning light coming on.

If the warning light switches on, the deteriorated engine oil must be changed as soon as possible, and never more than 500 km from the first time that the warning light switches on. Failure to observe the above may result in severe damage to the engine and invalidate the warranty. Remember that the operation of this warning light is not related to the amount of oil in the engine. Therefore, never top up with oil when the warning light starts flashing.

# $\underbrace{\models}_{\sim\sim\sim}$ Engine coolant overheating (red)

Turning the key to the MAR position illuminates the warning light, but it should switch off after a few seconds.

The warning light turns on when the engine is overheated.

The display will show the dedicated message.

If the warning light comes on when driving, proceed as follows:

□ normal driving conditions: stop the car, switch off the engine and check that the water level in the reservoir is not below the MIN mark. In this case, wait for a few minutes for the engine to cool down, then slowly and carefully open the cap, top up with coolant and check that the level is between the MIN and MAX reference on the reservoir itself. Also check visually for any fluid leaks. If the warning light comes on again at the next engine start-up, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services. □ If the car is used under demanding conditions (e.g. towing trailers uphill or fully loaded): slow down and, if the light stays on, stop the car. Stand for 2 or 3 minutes with the engine running and slightly accelerated to promote a better circulation of coolant. Then stop the engine. Check the correct liquid level as described above.

IMPORTANT Under severe use of the car, it is advisable to keep the engine on and slightly accelerated for a few minutes before switching it off.

#### Doors not closed correctly (red) (for versions/markets, where provided)

The warning light (or symbol on the display) lights up when one or more doors or the tailgate are not closed correctly. An acoustic signal is activated with the doors open and the car moving.

On some versions the warning light (or symbol on the display) also lights up when the bonnet is not closed correctly.



# EOBD/injection system failure (amber)

Under normal conditions, when the ignition key is turned to MAR-ON, the warning light switches on, but should switch off as soon as the engine is started.

If the warning light remains on or comes on whilst driving, it means that the injection system is not working properly; in particular, if the warning light comes on constantly, this indicates a malfunction in the supply/ignition system that could cause excessive exhaust emissions, a possible loss of performance, poor driveability and high fuel consumption.

A specific message is displayed on certain versions.

Under these conditions, you may continue travelling at moderate speed without demanding excessive effort from the engine. Prolonged use of the car with the warning light on may cause damage.

Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

The warning light goes out after the fault disappears, but the notification is stored in the system.

### NOTE (valid only for petrol engines)

If the warning light is flashing, this indicates that the catalytic converter may be damaged.

If the warning light comes on intermittently, release the accelerator pedal to lower the speed of the engine until the warning light stops tlashing; continue the journey at moderate speed, trying to avoid driving conditions that may cause further flashing and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.



Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible if the \_\_\_\_\_ warning light does not light up or if, while

travelling, the warning light comes on either constantly or flashing (in combination with a message on the display on some versions). The operation of warning light may be checked by the traffic police using specific devices. Follow the laws in force in the country where you are driving.



### ESC system (amber)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Turning the key to the MAR position illuminates the warning light, but it should switch off after a few seconds.

If the warning light (or the symbol on the display) does not switch off, or if it remains lit when driving, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

A specific message is displayed on certain versions.

Flashing of the warning light while driving indicates the intervention of the ESC system.

# **ASR failure**

Turning the key to the MAR position illuminates the warning light, but it should switch off after a few seconds.

If the warning light (or the symbol on the display) does not switch off, or if it remains lit when driving, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

A specific message is displayed on certain versions.

The warning light flashes while driving to indicate the intervention of the ASR system.

# Hill Holder failure

This warning light comes on, on some versions together with the Symbol and a message in the display, in the event of a fault with the Hill Holder system.

In this case, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

#### GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS



#### **Alfa Romeo CODE system** failure/Alarm failure (amber)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

SAFETY

STARTING AND

DRIVING

The warning light (or symbol on the display) will come on (on some versions, with a message on the display) to indicate an Alfa Romeo CODE system or alarm failure (for versions/markets, where provided).

In this case, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

### **Break-in attempt**

 $\overline{00}$ 

If this warning light flashes or, on some versions, if the symbol appears in the display (together with a message) this indicates a break-in attempt. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.

# IN AN EMERGENCY

# Glow plug preheating (diesel versions) (amber)

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL

INDEX

SPECIFICATIONS

This warning light switches on when the key is turned to MAR. It will switch off as soon as the heater plugs have reached a preset temperature. The engine can be started as soon as the warning light switches off.

IMPORTANT In mild or high temperature conditions, the warning light comes on for an extremely short time.

#### Glow plug preheating failure (diese) versions)

The warning light will flash (a message will appear on the display, on some versions) to indicate a fault in the glow plugs preheating system.

Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible to eliminate the fault



#### Water in diesel filter (diesel versions) (amber)

message in the display), to indicate the presence of water in the disel filter. The warning light remains on constantly when driving (together with a



The presence of water in the fuel supply circuit may cause severe damage to the injection system and irregular engine operation. If the warning light comes on in the instrument panel (together with a message in the display) contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible to bleed the system. Water may have entered the tank if this appears immediately after refuelling: if this happens, switch the engine off immediately and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.



#### **Fuel reserve - Limited range** (amber)

The warning light turns on when 8-10 litres of fuel are left in the tank.

When the remaining range is lower than approx. 50 km (or equivalent value in miles), on some versions, the display will show a warning message.

If the warning light flashes with the car in motion, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.



(0)

# **Cruise control (green)**

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The warning light comes on when the key is turned to MAR, but should go out after a few seconds if the Cruise Control function is off.

The warning light comes on when the Cruise Control ring nut is turned to the ON position (see the "Cruise Control" paragraph in this section). The display will show the dedicated message.



# **DPF** (diesel particulate filter) cleaning in progress (only diesel versions with DPF) (amber)

Turning the key to the MAR position illuminates the warning light, but it should switch off after a few seconds.

The warning light switches on constantly to indicate that the DPF system needs to eliminate the trapped pollutants (particulate) through the regeneration process.

The warning light does not come on during every DPF regeneration, but only when driving conditions require that the driver is notified. To switch the warning light off, the car must be kept moving until the regeneration process is completed.

On average, the process lasts fifteen minutes. Optimal conditions for completing the process are achieved by travelling at 60 km/h with engine revs above 2000 rpm.

When this warning light switches on, it does not indicate a car failure and thus it should not be taken to a workshop.

On some versions, together with the warning light, the display shows a dedicated message.



The driving speed must always be suitable for traffic and weather conditions and the driver must always comply with the Highway Code. The engine can be stopped even if the DPF warning light is on: however, repeated interruptions of the regeneration process could cause premature deterioration of the engine oil. For this reason, always wait until the warning light switches off before stopping the engine as described above. It is not advisable to complete DPF regeneration with the car stationary.

# (120)

### **Speed limit exceeded (red)**

(for versions/markets, where provided)



This warning light (for versions/markets, where provided) comes on when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h.

When the car exceeds the speed limit set in the Set-up Menu (e.g. 120 km/h), on some versions a message and a symbol are shown in the display and an acoustic signal is activated.

**GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS



# **General failure (amber)**

(for versions/markets, where provided)

SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND

MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL

SPECIFICATIONS

DRIVING

The warning light switches on in the circumstances indicated below. In these circumstances, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible to eliminate the fault.

### **Exterior lights failure**

See description for the -Ö- warning light.

### **Brake lights failure**

See description for "Brake lights failure".

#### Fuel cut-off

This warning light comes on when the fuel cut-off inertia switch is triggered. The display shows the dedicated message.

#### Start&Stop failure

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The warning light comes on when a failure is detected in the Start&Stop system.

Rain sensor failure (for versions/markets, where provided)

The warning light comes on when a rain sensor failure is detected.

#### Parking sensor failure (for versions/markets, where provided) See the description for the pw warning light.

#### Dusk sensor failure

(for versions/markets, where provided)

This warning light comes on when a dusk sensor failure is detected.

AFS adaptive lights failure (for versions/markets, where provided)

The warning light switches on when a fault is detected with the AFS adaptive lights (see "AFS adaptive lights" paragraph in this section). The display shows the dedicated message.

### Anti-pinch system failure

The warning light comes on when a failure is detected in the electric window anti-pinch system. The display shows the dedicated message.

### Engine oil pressure sensor failure

The warning light turns on when failure is detected in the engine oil pressure sensor. The display shows the dedicated message.



#### **Rear foa liahts (amber)**

The warning light switches on when the rear fog lights are switched on. The LED above the  $(1 \neq button will also light up when the lights are on.)$ 



# Front fog lights (green)

The warning light switches on when the fog lights are switched on. The LED above the ≢D button will also light up when the lights are on.



# Side lights (green)

This warning light comes on when the side lights are turned on.

# Follow me home (green)

The warning light switches on (together with a message shown on the display) when this device is in use (see "Follow me home device" paragraph in this section).



# **Dipped headlights (green)**



The warning light switches on when the dipped headlights are switched on



#### Main beam headlights (blue)

The warning light switches on when the main beam headlights are switched on.



#### Left direction indicator (green)

This warning light comes on when the direction indicator control lever is moved downwards and when the hazard warning light button is pressed.

**Right direction indicator** (green)

The warning light switches on when the direction indicator stalk is moved upwards or when the hazard warning light button is pressed. **GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDFX



SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND

MAINTENANCE

DRIVING

#### Start&Stop system activation/deactivation

(for versions/markets, where provided)

### Start&Stop system fault

(S)

Start&Stop system activation

A message will appear on the display when the Start&Stop system is activated.

The LED on the 😰 button (on the dashboard control trim) is off in this condition (see "Start&Stop" paragraph in this section).

Turning the Start&Stop off

- Versions with reconfigurable multifunction display: a message appears on the display when the Start&Stop system is deactivated.
- Versions with reconfigurable multifunction display: the symbol and a message appear on the display when the Start&Stop system is deactivated.

The LED on the  $\mathbf{x}$  button is on when the system is deactivated.

# Start&Stop system fault

If the Start&Stop system is faulty the () (versions with multifunction display) or () (versions with reconfigurable multifunction display) symbol flashes on the display.

For versions/markets where provided, a warning message is also displayed.

In this case, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

# 🚗 Luggage compartment open

On some versions a message + symbol on the display are shown when the luggage compartment is open.

# 🚗 Bonnet open

On some versions a message + symbol on the display are shown when the bonnet is open.

# Possible presence of ice on the road

On versions equipped with "Reconfigurable multifunction display", a message + symbol will appear on the display when the outdoor temperature falls to or below 3°C.

On versions with "Multifunction display" only the dedicated message is shown.

IMPORTANT In the event of outdoor temperature sensor failure, dashes are shown on the display instead of the value.

# Fuel cut-off

On some versions the display will show a message + symbol if the fuel cut-off intervenes.

For the fuel cut-off system reactivation procedure see paragraph "Fuel cut-off system" in this section.

\_\_\_\_\_

INDEX

SPECIFICATIONS

TECHNICAL



### **Exterior lights failure**

On some versions, the display will show a message + symbol if a fault is detected in one of the following lights:

□ daytime running lights (DRL)

□ side lights

□ direction indicators

□ rear fog lights

number plate lights.

The failure relating to these lights could be: one or more blown bulbs, a blown protection fuse or a break in the electrical connection.

# Brake light failure

On some versions the display will show a message + symbol if a fault is detected in the brake lights.

The fault may be caused by a blown bulb, a blown protection fuse or an interruption of the electric connection.

# **Dusk sensor failure**

(for versions/markets, where provided)

On some versions the display will show a message + symbol if there is a fault in the dusk sensor



# Rain sensor failure (for versions/markets, where provided)



On some versions the display will show a message + symbol if there is a fault in the rain sensor

# Pure (for versions/markets, where provided)

SAFETY

On some versions the display will show a message + symbol if there is a fault in the parking sensors.

# **Display of selected driving mode** ("Alfa DNA" system) (for versions/markets, where provided)

On versions equipped with a "Reconfigurable multifunction display", a message + symbol associated with the selected driving mode - "DYNAMIC", "NATURAL" or "ALL WEATHER" - is shown.

A warning message is shown on the display if one of these driving modes is not available.

On versions equipped with "Multifunction display", a letter (d or a) associated with the selected driving mode is shown together with a dedicated message.

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDFX

# **GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR SAFETY STARTING AND DRIVING IN AN EMERGENCY SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

# DISPLAY

The car may be provided with a multifunction/reconfigurable multifunction display that shows useful information to the user, according to the previous settings, when driving.

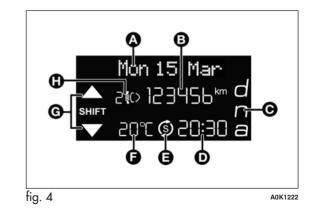
With the ignition key removed, the display activates and shows the time and total milometer reading (in km or miles) for a few seconds when a door is opened/closed.

#### MULTIFUNCTION DISPLAY "STANDARD" SCREEN

The following information appears on the display fig. 4:

A Date

- B Milometer (distance covered in km or miles)
- C Driving mode selected via "Alfa DNA" (dynamic car control system) (for versions/markets, where provided): d = Dynamic; n = Natural; a = All Weather
- D Time (always displayed, even with key removed and doors closed)
- E Start&Stop function indicator (for versions/markets where provided)
- F Outside temperature
- G Gear Shift Indicator (for versions/markets, where provided)
- $\ensuremath{\textbf{H}}$  Headlamp alignment position (only with dipped headlamps on)



TECHNICAL

INDEX

SPECIFICATIONS

#### **RECONFIGURABLE MULTIFUNCTION DISPLAY "STANDARD" SCREEN**

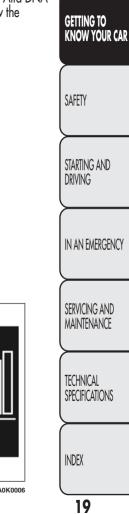
The following information appears on the display fig. 5:

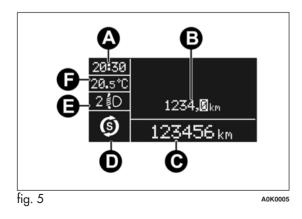
A Time

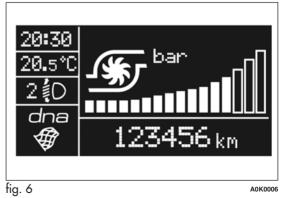
- **B** Trip mileage (in km or miles)
- **C** Milometer (distance covered in km or miles)
- D Car status indications (e.g. doors open, possible ice on road, etc.)/Start&Stop function indicator (for versions/markets, where provided)/Gear Shift Indicator (for versions/markets, where provided
- E Headlamp alignment position (only with dipped headlamps on)

**F** Outside temperature

On some versions, selecting "DYNAMIC" driving mode (see "Alfa DNA system" paragraph in this section) causes the display to show the turbine pressure fig. 6.







### **GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR**

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR SAFETY

> STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

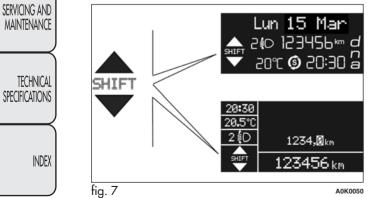
The "GSI" (Gear Shift Indicator) system advises the driver to change gear through a specific indication on the control panel fig. 7.

Through the GSI, the driver is notified that changing gear will allow a reduction in fuel consumption.

Therefore, for driving oriented towards reducing fuel consumption, it is recommended to stick to "Natural" or "All Weather" mode and to follow the suggestions of the Gear Shift Indicator, where the traffic conditions allow it.

When the SHIFT UP icon ( $\blacktriangle$  SHIFT) is shown on the display, the GSI is advising the driver to engage a higher gear, while the SHIFT DOWN ( $\blacktriangledown$  SHIFT) icon advises the driver to engage a lower gear.

**Note** The indication in the instrument panel remains on until the driver shifts gear or the driving conditions go back to a situation where gearshifting is not required to improve consumption.



# WELCOME MOVEMENT

On some versions, when the key is turned to MAR-ON, the following occurs:

□ quick movement (up and down) of the speedometer and rpm gauge; □ lighting of graphic symbols/display;

□ displaying of an animated graphic representation of the vehicle profile.

### Gauge movement

- □ If the key is removed from the ignition switch whilst the gauges are moving, they immediately go back to their initial position.
- □ Once they have reached the full scale values, the gauges rest on the value indicated by the vehicle.
- $\ensuremath{\square}$  The movement of the gauges stops when the engine is started.

# Lighting of graphic symbols/display

A few seconds after the key is inserted, the gauges, graphic symbols and display light up in sequence.

# Display of graphic animation

When the key is removed from the ignition switch (with the doors closed), the display remains lit up and shows a graphic animation. The display lighting is then dimmed gradually until it goes out completely.

# **CONTROL BUTTONS**

SET/ \_\_\_\_\_: press briefly to access the menu and/or go to next screen or confirm the selection. Hold down to go back to the standard screen.

 ${\rm V}$  : to scroll down through the displayed menu and the related options or to decrease the value displayed.

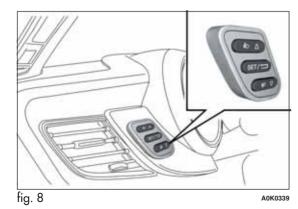
IMPORTANT The  ${\rm Mod}$  and  ${\rm Mod}$  which buttons activate different functions according to the following situations:

□ within the menu, they allow you to scroll up and down through the options;

 $\hfill\square$  during settings operations, they increase or decrease values.

#### **SETUP MENU**

The menu comprises a series of options which can be selected using buttons " $\exists \Box \land$ " and " $\exists \Box \bigtriangledown$ " to access the different selection and setting operations (Setup) indicated below.



Some options have a submenu. The menu can be activated by briefly pressing the SET/ button. **GETTING TO** The menu comprises the following options: KNOW YOUR CAR T MFNU □ SPFFD BFFP □ LIGHT SENSOR (for versions/markets where provided) SAFETY □ RAIN SENSOR (for versions/markets, where provided) TRIP B ACTIVATION/DATA □ SFT TIME STARTING AND □ SFT DATE DRIVING □ FIRST PAGE (for versions/markets where provided) □ SFF RADIO IN AN EMERGENCY T MEASUREMENT UNIT □ BU77FR VOIUME SERVICING AND **D** BUTTON VOLUME MAINTENANCE □ SEAT BELT BEEP/BUZZ □ SERVICE □ AIRBAG/PASSENGER BAG TECHNICAL □ DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS SPECIFICATIONS □ COURTESY LIGHTS ☐ MENU EXIT **Note** On cars equipped with radio navigator systems (for versions/ markets, where provided), some menu items are shown on the INDFX navigator display.



SAFETY

STARTING AND

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

DRIVING

# Selecting an option from the main menu without a submenu:

- press the SET/ button briefly to select the main menu setting you wish to change;
- □ press buttons "≧□ ▲ " or "≡□ ▼ " (by single presses) to select the new setting;
- press the SET/ button briefly to save the new setting and go back to the previous main menu option.

# Selecting an option from the main menu with a submenu:

- □ briefly press the SET/→ button to display the first submenu option;
- □ press buttons "ﷺ ▲ " or "ﷺ ▼ " (with single presses) to scroll through all the submenu options;
- IN AN EMERGENCY Diviefly press the SET/ \_\_\_\_\_ button to select the displayed submenu option and to open the relevant settings menu;
  - □ press buttons "ﷺ□ ▲ " or "ﷺ□ ▼ " (by single presses) to select the new setting for this submenu option;
  - □ press the SET/→ button briefly to save the new setting and go back to the previous submenu option.

# MENU ITEMS

### Menu

This item allows you to access the Setup Menu.

Press the "and " or "and " button to select the various Menu items. Hold down the SET/ button to return to the standard screen.

# Speed Beep (Speed limit)

This function may be used to set the car speed limit (km/h or mph); when this limit is exceeded the driver is alerted.

To set the desired speed limit, proceed as follows:

- □ briefly press the SET/→ button: the display will show the wording ("Speed Beep");
- □ press button "≦□ ▲ " or "≡□ ▼ " to select speed limit activation ("On") or deactivation ("Off");
- □ if the function is On, press "ﷺ ▲ " or "ﷺ ▼ " to select the required speed limit and then press the SET/→ button to confirm.

IMPORTANT Setting is possible between 30 and 200 km/h, or 20 and 125 mph, according to the previously set unit. See the "Unit of Measurement" paragraph described below. The setting will increase/ decrease by five units each time button  $\underline{I} \land \underline{I} \land \underline{I} \lor \mathbf{V}$  is pressed. Hold down the  $\underline{I} \land \underline{I} \lor \mathbf{V}$  button to automatically increase/ decrease the setting rapidly. Complete the setting by single pressing the button when you approach the required value.

Briefly press the SET/\_\_\_\_ button to go back to the menu screen or hold the button down to go back to the standard screen without saving.

23

INDFX

To cancel the setting, proceed as follows:

- $\Box$  briefly press the SET/  ${\color{black} \fbox}$  button, "On" will flash in the display;
- $\Box$  press button  ${\rm ID}$   ${\bf V}$  , "Off" will flash on the display;
- □ briefly press the SET/→ button to go back to the menu screen or hold the button down to go back to the standard screen without saving.

#### Headlight sensor (Automatic headlight/dusk sensor sensitivity adjustment)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

This function enables the headlights to come on or go off depending on external lighting conditions.

The dusk sensor sensitivity can be adjusted according to 3 levels (level 1= minimum sensitivity, level 2= average sensitivity, level 3= maximum sensitivity).

The higher the sensitivity set, the lesser is the external light variation needed to switch the lights on (e.g. with a setting on level 3 at sunset the headlights come on in advance in relation to levels 1 and 2).

Proceed as follows to set the desired adjustment:

- □ press the SET/→ button briefly to make the display flash the previously set level;
- $\Box$  press the " $\triangleq \Box \land$  " or " $\equiv \Box \lor$  " button to select;
- □ briefly press the SET/→ button to go back to the menu screen or hold the button down to go back to the standard screen without saving.

# Rain sensor (Rain sensor sensitivity adjustment)

This function allows you to adjust the rain sensor sensitivity to 4 levels. To set the required sensitivity level proceed as follows:

- □ briefly press the SET/ button, the previously set sensitivity level will flash on the display;
- $\Box$  press the " $\underline{i}$   $\triangle$  " or " $\underline{i}$   $\bigcirc$   $\nabla$  " button to make the adjustment;
- □ briefly press the SET/ \_ button to go back to the menu screen or hold the button down to go back to the standard screen without saving.

#### Activation/Trip B data (Trip B enablement)

This function may be used to activate (On) or deactivate (Off) the Trip B (partial trip). For further information see "Trip computer".

Proceed as follows to switch the function on and off:

- □ press the SET/→ button briefly to make the display flash "On" or "Off" according to what was previously set;
- $\Box$  press the " $\exists \Box \blacktriangle$  " or " $\equiv \Box \bigtriangledown$  " button to select;

# □ briefly press the SET/→ button to go back to the menu screen or hold the button down to go back to the standard screen without saving.

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR	This function enables th "Time" and "Format".
	To carry out the adjust
SAFETY	briefly press the SET, "Format") will be dis
	□ press the button "≛⊂ submenus;
	🗆 once you have select
STARTING AND DRIVING	when you select "Tin the display;
	□ press the "≧⊃ ▲ " o
IN AN EMERGENCY	<pre>D briefly press the SET, "minutes";</pre>
	□ press the "≧⊃ ▲ " o
	IMPORTANT The setting
	time the "∄⊖ ▲ " or "
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE	button to increase/dec
MAINTLINAINCL	Complete the setting by the required value.
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS	When you select "Fo makes the display m
	🛭 press button "🔊 🔺
	When you have made button to go back
INDEX	button to go back
	•
	Hold the SET/

# Time adjustment (Clock adjustment)

This function enables the clock to be set through two sub-menus: "Time" and "Format".

To carry out the adjustment, proceed as follows:

- □ briefly press the SET/→ button and two submenus ("Time" and "Format") will be displayed;
- □ press the button "≦□ ▲ " or "≡□ ▼ " to switch between the two submenus;
- 🗆 once you have selected a sub-menu, press SET/🕁 briefly;
- when you select "Time", pressing SET/ makes the hours flash on the display;
  - $\Box$  press the " $\Box \land$  " or " $\Box \lor$  " button to make the adjustment;
  - □ briefly press the SET/→ button, which makes the display flash the "minutes";
  - $\Box$  press the "ip  $\blacktriangle$  " or "ip  $\blacktriangledown$  " button to make the adjustment.

IMPORTANT The setting will increase or decrease by one unit each time the " $\underline{\models}$   $\land$  " or " $\underline{\models}$   $\checkmark$ " button is pressed. Hold down the button to increase/decrease the setting rapidly and automatically. Complete the setting by single pressing the button when you approach the required value.

- □ When you select "Format", pressing the SET/→ button briefly makes the display mode flash on the display;
- □ press button "≦□ ▲ " or "≡□ ▼ " to select "24h" or "12h".
- When you have made the required settings, briefly press the SET/ button to go back to the submenu screen or hold the button down togo back to the main menu screen without saving the new settings.
- Hold the SET/ \_ button down again to return to the standard screen or to the main menu according to where you are in the menu.

# Set date (Setting the date)

Using this function it is possible to change the date (day – month – year).

Proceed as follows to start the update:

- □ briefly press the SET/→ button: the "year" starts flashing on the display;
- $\Box$  press the "area  $\blacksquare$  or "area  $\blacksquare$  " or "the substant  $\blacksquare$  button to make the adjustment;
- □ briefly press the SET/→ button: the "month" will flash on the display;
- □ press the "≦○ ▲ " or "≅○ ▼ " button to make the adjustment;
   □ briefly press the SET/→ button: the "day" will flash on the display;
   □ press the "≦○ ▲ " or "≅○ ▼ " button to make the adjustment.

IMPORTANT The setting will increase or decrease by one unit each time the " $\underline{\ast}$  or " $\underline{\ast}$  or " $\underline{\ast}$  button is pressed. Hold the button down to increase/decrease the setting rapidly. Complete the setting by single pressing the button when you approach the required value. Briefly press the SET/ $\underline{\leftarrow}$  button to go back to the menu screen or hold the button down to go back to the standard screen without saving.

# First page (Display of information on the main screen)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

This function allows you to choose the information you would like to see on the main screen. You can view the date or the trip distance.

To make your choice, proceed as follows:

 $\Box$  briefly press the SET/  ${\color{black} \fbox{\sc button: "Initial page" will be displayed;}}$ 

□ press the SET/ button again briefly to display the "date" and "engine info" options;

- □ press "ﷺ□ ▲ " or "ﷺ□ ▼ " to select the information you wish to see on the main page of the display;
- □ briefly press the SET/→ button to go back to the menu screen or hold the button down to go back to the standard screen without saving.

When the key is turned to MAR-ON and the initial check stage is over, the display will show the information selected via the "First page" menu function.

# See radio (audio information display)

This function is used to display radio information.

Radio: selected radio station frequency or RDS message, automatic tuning activation or AutoSTore;

□ Audio CD, MP3 CDs: track number;

□ CD Changer: CD number and track number;

To show the sound system information on the display (On) or clear it (Off), proceed as follows:

□ briefly press the SET/→ button, the display will show "On" or "Off" flashing depending on the previous setting;

 $\Box$  press the " $\triangleq \Box \land$  " or " $\equiv \Box \lor$  " button to select;

□ briefly press the SET/ → button to go back to the menu screen or hold the button down to go back to the standard screen without saving.

# Autoclose (Automatic door lock operation with car running)

When activated (On), this function locks the doors automatically when the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h.

Proceed as follows to activate or deactivate this function:

- □ press the SET/→ button briefly to display a submenu;
- □ press the SET/→ button briefly to make the display flash "On" or "Off" according to what was previously set;
- □ press the "ﷺ ▲ " or "ﷺ ▼ " button to select;
- □ press the SET/→ button briefly to return to the submenu screen or hold the button down to return to the main menu screen without saving;
- □ hold the SET/→ button down again to return to the standard screen or to the main menu according to where you are in the menu.

# Unit of measurement (Setting the unit of measurement)

With this function it is possible to set the units through three submenus: "Distances", "Consumption" and "Temperature".

- To set the desired measurement unit, proceed as follows:
- $\Box$  briefly press the SET/  ${\color{black} \fbox}$  button to display the three sub-menus;
- □ press the "≛□ ▲ " or "≡□ ▼ " button to navigate through the three submenus;
- □ once the submenu to be modified has been selected, briefly press the SET/→ button;
- □ if the submenu "Distance" is entered: by briefly pressing SET/ the display shows "km" or "mi" depending on the previous setting;
- $\Box$  press the " $\textcircled{b} \land \blacksquare$  " or " $\Huge{b} \lor \blacksquare$  " button to select;
- □ when you select "Consumption", pressing SET/→ button makes km/l, l/100km or mpg appear on the display depending on the previous setting;

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS



**GETTING TO** 

KNOW YOUR CAR

If the set distance unit is "km", the fuel consumption unit will be displayed in km/l or l/100 km.

If the distance unit set is "mi" the fuel consumption unit will be displayed in "mpg".

 $\Box$  press the " $\triangleq \Box \land \blacksquare$ " or " $\equiv \Box \bigtriangledown$ " button to select;

□ when you select "Temperature", pressing SET/→ button °C or °F will be displayed depending on the previous setting;

□ press the "≦⊃ ▲ " or "≣⊃ ▼ " button to select;

When you have made the required settings, briefly press the SET/ button to go back to the submenu screen or hold the button down togo back to the main menu screen without saving the new settings. Hold the SET/\_ button down again to return to the standard screen or to the main menu according to where you are in the menu.

# Language (Language selection)

Display messages can be shown in different languages: Italian, English, German, Portuguese, Spanish, French, Dutch, Turkish and Brazilian.

To set the desired language proceed as follows:

□ briefly press the SET/→ button: the previously set "language" starts flashing on the display;

 $\Box$  press the " $\triangleq \bigcirc \blacktriangle$  " or " $\equiv \bigcirc \blacktriangledown$  " button to select;

briefly press the SET/ button to go back to the menu screen or hold the button down to go back to the standard screen without saving.

# Warnings volume (Adjusting the alert/warning acoustic signal volume)

With this function it is possible to adjust (to eight levels) the volume of the acoustic signal which sounds in the event of alerts and warning. To set the desired volume proceed as follows:

□ press the SET/→ button briefly, making the display flash the previously set volume "level";

 $\Box$  press the "area  $\blacksquare$  or "area  $\blacksquare$  " or "area  $\blacksquare$  button to make the adjustment;

□ briefly press the SET/→ button to go back to the menu screen or hold the button down to go back to the standard screen without saving.

#### Button volume (Button volume adjustment)

With this function it is possible to adjust (to eight levels) the volume of the acoustic signal when the SET/\_ button is held down to exit a submenu and return to the standard menu.

To set the desired volume proceed as follows:

- □ briefly press the SET/→ button, the previously set volume "level" will be displayed;
- □ press the button "ﷺ□ ▲ " or "ﷺ□ ▼ " to adjust the volume; an acoustic signal equal to the volume level being selected is emitted during this adjustment;
- □ briefly press the SET/→ button to go back to the previous screen or hold the button down to go back to the standard screen without saving.

On versions with reconfigurable multifunction display, the volume level is represented by bars.

#### Belt reminder (Reactivation of SBR buzzer)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

This function can only be displayed after Alfa Romeo Authorized Services have deactivated the SBR system (see "SBR system" in the "Safety" chapter).

# Service (Scheduled servicing)

With this function it is possible to view information on servicing deadlines depending on kilometres travelled or daily intervals. With the Service function it is also possible to view the interval (in kilometres or miles) before the next engine oil change is due.

To consult this information, proceed as follows:

- □ briefly press the SET/ \_\_\_\_\_ button: the display shows when servicing is due in km or mi according to the previous setting (see paragraph "Units of measurement");
- □ briefly press the SET/→ button to go back to the menu screen or hold the button down to go back to the standard screen.

IMPORTANT According to the "Scheduled Servicing Plan", the car must be serviced every 30,000 km (1.4 petrol versions) or 35,000 km (1750 Turbo petrol and diesel versions). This message is displayed automatically when the key is turned to MAR, starting at 2,000 km (or equivalent value in miles) from when the next service is due and reappearing every 200 km (or equivalent value in miles). Below 200 km the signals become more frequent. The display will be in km or mi depending on the measurement unit settings. When the next scheduled service is approaching and the key is turned to MAR, the word Service will appear on the display, followed by the number of kilometres or miles left. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services where the "Scheduled Servicing Plan" operations will be performed and the message will be reset.

#### Passenger airbag/side bag (front passenger side airbag and side bag for pelvis, chest and shoulder protection - Side bag activation/deactivation)

This function is used to activate/deactivate the passenger side air bag. Proceed as follows:

- □ press the SET/→ button and, after the message (Bag pass: Off) (to deactivate) or (Bag pass: On) (to activate) is displayed by pressing buttons "≧□ ▲ " and "≅□ ▼ ", press the SET/→ button again;
- 🗆 a confirmation request message will appear on the display;
- □ by pressing the "ﷺ ▲ " or "ﷺ ♥ tuttons select "Yes" (to confirm activation/deactivation) or "No" (to cancel);
- □ press the SET/→ button briefly, a message confirming the selection will be displayed and you will return to the menu screen or, pressing the button for longer, you will return to the standard screen without memorising.

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

#### **GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

# **Daytime running lights (DRL)**

off

SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

DRIVING

With this function is possible to turn the daytime running lights on and

- Proceed as follows to activate or deactivate this function:
- □ press the SET/→ button briefly to display a submenu;
- □ press the SET/→ button briefly to make the display flash "On" or "Off" according to what was previously set;
- $\Box$  press the " $\Box \land A$  " or " $\Box \land V$  " button to select;
- □ press the SET/→ button briefly to return to the submenu screen or hold the button down to return to the main menu screen without saving;
- □ hold the SET/→ button down again to return to the standard screen or to the main menu according to where you are in the menu.

# Courtesy lights (Activation/ deactivation of "Greeting lights")

(for versions/markets, where provided)

With this function it is possible to turn on the side lights, the number plate lights and the ceiling lights for approximately 25 seconds when the doors or boot are opened using the remote control, with the following exceptions:

□ interruption after 5 seconds from when the door closes

interruption after locking using the remote control

□ interruption after a lock or other action using the remote control

Proceed as follows to switch the function on and off:

- □ press the SET/→ button briefly to make the display flash "On" or "Off" according to what was previously set;
- □ press the "ﷺ ▲ " or "ﷺ ▼ " button to select;
- □ briefly press the SET/→ button to go back to the menu screen or hold the button down to go back to the standard screen without saving.

# Menu exit

This is the last function that closes the cycle of settings listed in the menu screen.

Pressing the SET/ button briefly will return the display to the standard screen without saving.

Press the  $\equiv D \mathbf{\nabla}$  button to return to the first menu item.

# TRIP COMPUTER

#### **GENERAL INFORMATION**

The Trip computer is used to display information on car operation when the key is turned to MAR.

This function allows you to define two separate trips called "Trip A" and "Trip B" for monitoring the car's "complete journey" in a reciprocally independent manner.

Both functions are resettable (reset - start of a new journey).

"Trip A" is used to display the figures relating to:

🗆 Range

Distance travelled

□ Average fuel consumption

□ Instant fuel consumption

□ Average speed

□ Trip time (driving time).

"Trip B" may be used to display the figures relating to:

Distance travelled B

□ Average consumption B

□ Average speed B

□ Trip time B (driving time).

The "Trip B" function may be disabled (see "Activating Trip B"). "Range" and "Instant consumption" parameters cannot be reset.

# VALUES DISPLAYED

#### Range

This indicates the indicative distance that may be travelled with the fuel in the tank, assuming that driving conditions do not change. The display will show the reading '-----' when the following events take place:

□ range value lower than 50 km (or 30 mi) □ car parked with engine running for a long period.

IMPORTANT The range can be affected by several factors: driving style (see "Driving style" in the "Starting and driving" section), type of route (motorway, towns and cities, mountain roads, etc.), conditions of use (load, tyre pressures, etc.). Trip planning must therefore take the above into account.

#### Distance covered

Shows the distance covered since the start of the new journey.

#### Average consumption

Shows the approximate average fuel consumption since the start of the new journey.

#### Instantaneous consumption

This indicates the fuel consumption. The value is constantly updated. The display will show "- - - -" if the car is parked with the engine running.

#### GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

**GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

DRIVING

Average speed

This shows the average car speed as a function of the overall time elapsed since the start of the new journey.

Trip time

The time elapsed since the start of a new journey.

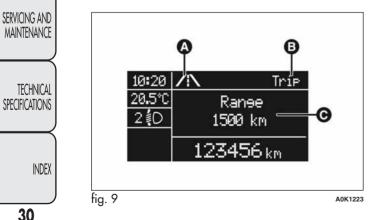
# Indications on display

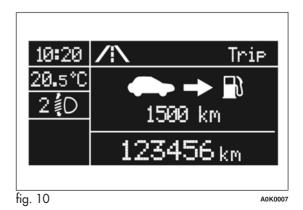
Each time a value is displayed, the following information is shown: □ animated icon in the upper part fig. 9; □ the word "Trip" (or "Trip A" or "Trip B") (B); □ the name, value and unit of measurement of the selected parameter (e.g. "Range 1500 km") (C). After a few seconds the name and value of the selected parameter are replaced by an icon fig. 10.

The icons relating to the various parameters are the following:

 $\square \frown \blacksquare$  "Range";

- □ 🔊 🖪 "Average consumption A" (if Trip A is active, or "B" if Trip B is active):
- □ 👚 🔿 ┌─ P "Distance" (if Trip A is active, or "B" if Trip B is active):
- □ 🔊 👘 "Instantaneous consumption";
- □ ↔ **H** "Average speed A" (if Trip A is active, or "B" if Trip B is active):
- $\Box \bigcirc \mathbf{A}$  "Trip time" (if Trip A is active, or "B" if Trip B is active);





30

### TRIP button 0.00

The TRIP 0.00 button is located on the right hand stalkfig. 11. With the ignition key turned to MAR-ON, this button allows you to view the previously described values and also set them to zero to begin a new mission:

□ short press: display various values;

□ long press: values reset and start of a new mission.

### **New mission**

This begins after a reset:

- "manual" resetting by the user, by pressing the relevant button;
- □ "automatic" resetting, when the "trip distance" reaches 99999.9 km or when the "Travel time" reaches 999:59 (999 hours and 59 minutes);
- 🗆 after disconnection/reconnection of the battery.

IMPORTANT The reset operation when "Trip A" details are being displayed only resets the information associated with this function.

IMPORTANT The reset operation when "Trip B" details are being displayed resets only the information associated with this function.

#### Start of journey procedure

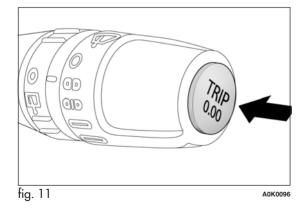
With the ignition key at MAR-ON, reset by pressing the TRIP 0.00 button and holding it down for more than 2 seconds.

# Trip Exit

You can automatically exit the Trip function once all the values have been displayed or by holding the SET/ \_ button down for more than 1 second.

KNOW YOUR CAR
SAFETY
STARTING AND DRIVING
IN AN EMERGENCY
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS
INDEX

CETTING TO



# SYMBOLS

**GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR SAFETY STARTING AND DRIVING IN AN EMERGENCY SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS INDEX

Some car components have coloured labels whose symbols indicate precautions to be observed when using this component. Under the bonnet there is also a label that summarises all the symbols.

# ALFA ROMEO CODE SYSTEM

To further protect your car from theft, it has been fitted with an engine immobilising system. It is automatically activated when the ignition key is removed.

Each key contains an electronic device which modulates the signal emitted during ignition by an antenna built into the ignition device. The modulated signal, which changes each time the engine is started, is the "password", by means of which the control unit recognises the key and enables to start the engine.

### **OPERATION**

Each time the car is started by turning the ignition key to MAR, the Alfa Romeo CODE system control unit sends an acknowledgement code to the engine management control unit to deactivate the inhibitor. The code is sent only if the Alfa Romeo CODE system control unit has recognised the code transmitted from the key.

Each time the ignition key is turned to STOP, the Alfa Romeo CODE system deactivates the functions of the engine management control unit. If, during starting, the code is not correctly recognised, the  $\operatorname{scale}$  warning light switches on in the instrument panel.

In this case, turn the key to STOP and then to MAR; if it is still locked, try again with the other keys that come with the vehicle. If you are still unable to start the engine contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

### Activation of warning light while driving

□ If the The warning light switches on, this means that the system is running a self-diagnosis (for example due to a voltage drop).

□ If the ⊊™ warning light remains on, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.



The electronic components inside the key may be damaged if the key is subjected to strong shocks.

# THE KEYS

### CODE CARD

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The CODE card fig. 12 is provided with the keys and bears the following:

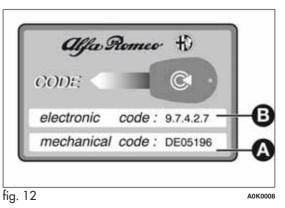
□ A - electronic code;

□ B - mechanical code.

Keep the codes in a safe place, not in the car.









SAFETY

**GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

> STARTING AND DRIVING

# IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICA SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

Press button B to open/close the metal insert. Press button B fig. 14 only with the key away from your body, especially your eyes and from objects which could get damaged (e.g. your clothes). Do not leave the key unattended to avoid the button being accidentally pressed while it is

**KEY WITHOUT REMOTE CONTROL** 

**KEY WITH REMOTE CONTROL** 

The metal insert A fig. 13 operates:

(for versions/markets, where provided)

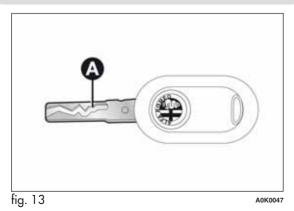
The metal insert A fig. 14 operates:

 $\Box$  the ignition switch;  $\Box$  the door lock

 $\Box$  the ignition switch;

 $\Box$  the door lock.

being handled, e.g. by a child.



### Unlocking the doors and the tailagte

Briefly press button **a**: for unlocking of doors and luggage compartment, timed switching-on of internal roof lights and double flashing of direction indicators (for versions/markets, where provided).

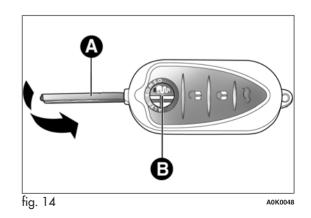
The doors are unlocked automatically if the fuel cut-off system intervenes.

Once the doors are locked, if one or more doors or the boot are not closed correctly, the LED and direction indicators start flashing quickly.

# Locking the doors and the tailgate

Briefly press button 🔒 : for locking of doors and luggage compartment, with switching-off of roof light and single flashing of direction indicators (for versions/markets, where provided).

If one or more doors are open, the doors will not be locked. This is indicated by a rapid flashing of the direction indicators (for versions/markets, where provided). If the luggage compartment is open, the doors will, however, be locked.



When a speed of over 20 km/h is reached, the doors are automatically locked if this specific function has been set (only on versions with multifunction reconfigurable display).

When the doors are locked from outside the car (using the remote control), LED A fig. 15 will switch on for a few seconds and then start flashing (deterrent function).

### **Opening the luggage compartment**

Press the subtron to open the luggage compartment remotely. The direction indicators will flash twice to indicate that the boot has been opened.

#### **REQUESTING ADDITIONAL REMOTE** CONTROLS

The system can recognise up to 8 remote controls. If you need to request a new remote control, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services, taking the CODE Card (for versions/markets, where provided), an identity document and documents proving ownership of the car with YOU.

#### **REPLACING THE BATTERY IN THE KEY** WITH REMOTE CONTROL

Proceed as follows:

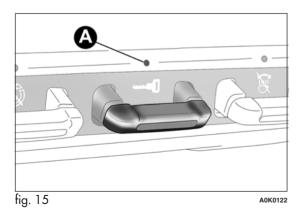
- □ press button A fig. 16 and move the metal insert B to opening position; turn screw C to r using a fine bit screwdriver;
- □ remove battery compartment D and replace battery E respecting the polarity; reinsert compartment D in the key and secure it by turning screw C to A.

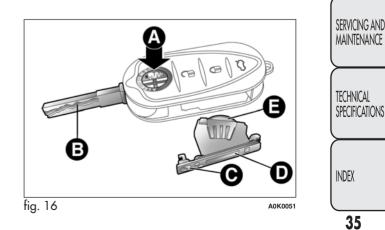


SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

# IN AN EMERGENCY







SAFETY

Used batteries are harmful to the environment. They must be disposed of as specified by law in special containers or taken to Alfa Romeo Authorized Services, which will 衞 take care of their disposal.

### SAFE LOCK DEVICE

(for versions/markets, where provided)

This safety device inhibits the operation of the interior door handles and the door locking/unlocking button.

We recommend that you activate this device each time you park the car.

### Activating the device

IN AN EMERGENCY

STARTING AND

DRIVING

The device is enabled on all the doors by pressing the  $\mathbf{G}$  button on the key twice guickly.

The direction indicators flash 3 times and LED A fig. 17 flashes to indicate that the device has been activated. The device does not switch on if one or more doors are not properly shut.

# Deactivating the device

The device deactivates automatically when:

□ the key insert is turned to opening position in the driver side door;

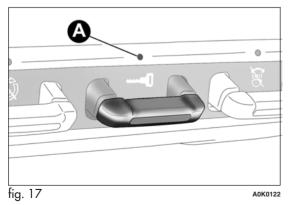
 $\Box$  the  $\Box$  button is pressed on the remote control;

□ the ignition key is turned to MAR.



Once the safe lock device is engaged it is impossible to open the doors from inside the car. Before engaging the device, check that there is no one left on board. If the remote control battery is flat, the device can only be deactivated by using the metal insert in one of the door locks.

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS INDEX 36



The main functions that can be activated with the keys (with or without remote control) are the following:

Type of key	Unlocking the doors	Locking the doors from the outside	Safe Lock activation (*)	Unlocking the tailgate	Lowering windows (*)	Raising windows (*)	GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR
Key without remote control/ Key with remote control	Anticlockwise key turn (driver side)	Clockwise key turn (driver side)	-	-		-	SAFETY
Key with remote control	Brief press of 🔒 button	Brief press of <b>P</b> button	Double press of A	Brief press of 🚗 button	Long press (more than 2 seconds) of Dutton	Long press (more than 2 seconds) of that button	STARTING AND DRIVING
Flashing direction indicators (only with key with remote control)	2 flashes	1 flash	3 flashes	2 flashes	2 flashes	1 flash	IN AN EMERGENCY
Deterrent LED	Switching off	Switching on constantly for about 3 seconds, followed by deterrence LED flashing	Double flash, followed by deterrence flashing	Deterrence flashing	Switching off	Deterrence flashing	SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

(\*)For versions/markets, where provided.

IMPORTANT Window opening operation is a consequence of a door unlocking control; window closing operation is a consequence of a door locking control.

INDEX

TECHNICAL

SPECIFICATIONS

## ALARM

**GETTING TO** 

SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND

MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

DRIVING

KNOW YOUR CAR

(for versions/markets, where provided)

# ALARM ACTIVATION

The alarm activates in the following cases:

- wrongful opening of a door/bonnet/luggage compartment (perimeter protection);
- □ wrongful operation of the ignition switch (key turned to MAR); □ cutting of the battery cables;

D movement inside the passenger compartment (volumetric protection);

anomalous lifting/tilting of the car (for versions/markets, where provided).

Operation of the alarm is indicated by an acoustic and visual signal (flashing of the direction indicators for several seconds). The alarm activation modes may vary according to the market. There is a maximum number of acoustic/visual cycles. When this is reached the system returns to normal operation.

IMPORTANT The engine locking function is guaranteed by the Alfa Romeo CODE, which is automatically activated when the ignition key is extracted from the ignition switch.

IMPORTANT The alarm is adapted to meet requirements in various countries.

# SWITCHING ON THE ALARM

With the doors and bonnet closed and the ignition key either turned to STOP or removed, direct the key with the remote control towards the car, then press and release the **1** button. Except for specific markets, the system emits a visual and acoustic signal and enables door locking.

A self-diagnosis stage precedes the switching on of the alarm: in the event of faults, the system will generate a further acoustic and/or visual signal through the LED on the dashboard.

If after the alarm is switched on, a second acoustic signal is emitted and/or a visual signal via the LED on the dashboard, wait about 4 seconds and switch off the alarm by pressing the D button, check that the doors, bonnet and luggage compartment are closed correctly and then reactivate the system by pressing the D button.

If the alarm emits an acoustic signal even when the doors, bonnet and boot are correctly closed, a fault has occurred in system operation: in this case, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

# ALARM SELF-ACTIVATION

(for versions/markets, where provided)

If the alarm has not been activated using the remote control, once about 30 seconds have elapsed from when the ignition key was turned to STOP and a door or the tailgate was last opened and then closed, the alarm activates automatically.

This is indicated by the LED on the button A fig. 18 lighting up intermittently and the indications of activation described previously.

To deactivate the alarm, press the 🔒 button on the remote control.

The alarm also activates when the doors are closed by turning the metal insert of the key in the driver side door latch. If the system self-activates, the doors are not locked.

# SWITCHING OFF THE ALARM

Press the D button. The following operations are performed (excluding specific markets):

□ the direction indicators flash briefly twice;

□ there are two brief acoustic signals;

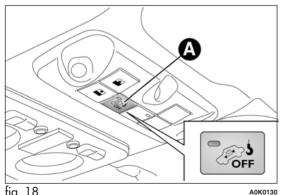
□ unlocking of the doors.

IMPORTANT The alarm does not switch off when the central opening is activated using the metal insert in the key.

# **VOLUMETRIC/ANTI-LIFT PROTECTION**

To guarantee the correct operation of the protection, close the side windows and any sun root completely (for versions/markets, where provided).

To disable the function, press button A fig. 18 before activating the alarm. When the function is disabled, this is indicated by the LED on the button flashing for several seconds.



Any disabling of the volumetric/anti-lift protection must be repeated each time the instrument panel is switched off.

## **DISABLING THE ALARM**

To permanently disable the alarm (e.g. during a lengthy period of car inactivity), lock the car by turning the metal insert of the key with remote control in the lock.

IMPORTANT If the batteries of the key with the remote control run out or there is a fault with the system, the alarm can be switched off by inserting the key in the ignition switch and turning it to MAR.



SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING



SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

# **IGNITION DEVICE**

#### **GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND

DRIVING

The key can be turned to three different positions fig. 19:

□ STOP: engine off, key can be removed, steering column locked. Some electrical devices (e.g. car radio, central door locking system, alarm, etc.) are enabled;

□ MAR: driving position. All electrical devices are enabled; AVV: engine start-up.

The ignition switch is fitted with a safety system that requires the ignition key to be turned back to STOP if the engine does not start, before the starting operation can be repeated.

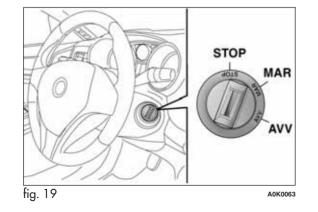


If the ignition switch is tampered with (e.g.: attempted theft), have it checked over by Alfa Romeo Authorized Services before driving again.



IN AN EMERGENCY

TECHNICA SPECIFICATIONS



Always remove the key when you leave the car to prevent someone from accidentally operating the controls. Remember to engage the handbrake. Engage 1<sup>st</sup> gear if the car is parked uphill or reverse if the car is parked downhill. Never leave children unattended in the car.

# **STEERING LOCK**

### Engagement

When the key is at STOP, remove the key and turn the steering wheel until it locks

### Disengagement

Move the steering wheel slightly and turn the ignition key to MAR.



It is absolutely forbidden to carry out any after-market operation involving steering system or steering column modifications (e.g.: installation of anti-theft device) that could badly affect performance and safety, invalidate the warranty and also result in non-compliance of the car with type-approval requirements.



Never remove the key while the car is moving. The steering wheel will lock as soon as it is turned. This holds true for cars being towed as well.

40

# SEATS

#### **FRONT SEATS**



All adjustments must be made with the car stationary.



### Lengthwise adjustment

Lift the lever A fig. 20 and push the seat forwards or backwards: in driving position your arms should rest on the rim of the steering wheel.

After releasing the adjustment lever, always check that the seat is locked on the guides by trying to move it back and forth. If the seat is not locked into place, it may unexpectedly slide and cause the driver to lose control of

Move lever B fig. 20 up or down until the desired height is achieved.

IMPORTANT Carry out the adjustment whilst seated in the driver's seat.





STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

Backrest angle adjustment

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Turn knob C fig. 20 until the desired position is reached.



the car.

Height adjustment

For maximum safety, keep the back of your seat upright, lean back into it and make sure the seat belt fits closely across your chest and pelvis. SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### **Electric seat heating**

(for versions/markets, where provided)

**GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

DRIVING

With the key turned to MAR, press button A fig. 21 to switch the function on/off.

When the function is enabled, the LED on the button switches on.

# Electric lumbar adjustment (for versions/markets, where provided)

With the key turned to MAR, press button B fig. 21 to switch the function on/off.

When the function is enabled, the LED on the button switches on.

#### FRONT SEATS WITH ELECTRIC ADJUSTMENT

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The controls for fig. 22 seat adjustment are:

Multifunction control A:

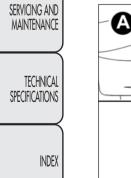
□ seat height adjustment (vertical seat movement);

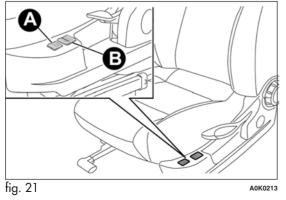
I lengthwise seat movement;

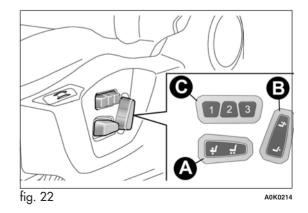
B: Backrest angle and lumbar adjustment;

C: Driver side seat position memory buttons.

IMPORTANT Electric adjustment is only possible with the ignition key turned to MAR and for approximately 1 minute after turning it to STOP. The seat can be moved after opening the door for about 3 minutes, or until the door is closed.







# Memorising driver's seat positions

The buttons C allow three different driver's seat positions to be memorised and recalled.

Memorisation and recall are possible with the ignition key in MAR position and for 3 minutes after opening the driver's side door or until the door is closed, even when the ignition key is in STOP position.

The memorisation of the position is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

To memorise a seat position, adjust it with the various controls, then press the button where you want to memorise the position for several seconds.

When a new seat position is memorised, the previously memorised position on the same button is automatically overwritten.

Recalling a memorised position is also possible for about 3 minutes after the doors are opened and about 1 minute after the ignition key is turned to the STOP position.

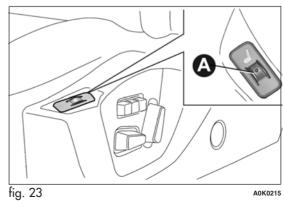
To recall a memorised position, press the relevant button briefly.

# Heated seats

(for versions/markets, where provided)

With the ignition key at MAR, turn ring nut A fig. 23 to turn the function on/off.

The heating can be adjusted to 3 different settings (0 = seat heating switched off).

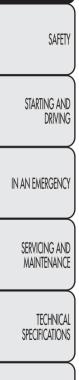






# HEAD RESTRAINTS

# FRONT



Head restraints are adjustable in height and they lock automatically into the desired position:

🗆 upwards adjustment: raise the head restraint until it clicks into place;

□ downwards adjustment: press button A fig. 24 and lower the head restraint.



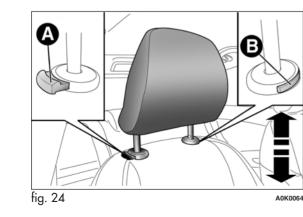
Head restraints must be adjusted so that the head, rather than the neck, rests on them. Only in this case can they protect your head correctly. To remove the head restraints:

- 🗆 raise the head restraints to their maximum height;
- press buttons A and B fig. 24, then remove the head restraints by pulling them upwards.

# "Anti-Whiplash" device

The head restraints are equipped with an "Anti-Whiplash" device, which reduces the distance between head and head restraint in the event of a rear impact, thus mitigating the "whiplash" effect.

The head restraint may move when the backrest is pressed by the occupant's torso or hand: this behaviour is caused by the system and should not be considered a malfunction.



# REAR

Two height-adjustable head restraints are provided for the back seats (to adjust the height see the previous paragraph).

On some versions a head restraint is also provided for the central seat. To remove the head restraints:

□ raise the head restraints to their maximum height;

□ press buttons A and B fig. 25, then remove the head restraints by pulling them upwards.

# **STEERING WHEEL**

It can be adjusted axially and vertically.

To adjust, release A fig. 26 by pushing it forwards (position 1) and adjust the steering wheel. Then lock lever A by pulling it towards the steering wheel (position 2).



All adjustments must be carried out only with the vehicle stationary and engine off.



It is absolutely forbidden to carry out any after-market operation involving steering system or steering column modifications (e.g. installation of anti-theft device) that could badly affect performance and safety, invalidate the warranty and also result in the car not meeting type-approval requirements.



SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING



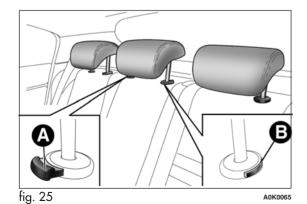


fig. 26 A0K0077 SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

# **REAR VIEW MIRRORS**

# INTERNAL MIRROR

The rear view mirror has two different positions: normal or anti-glare.

The mirror must be adjusted starting from the normal position, with the lever A fig. 27 towards the windscreen (daytime use).

To prevent dazzling effects due to following cars, the mirror can be moved into the anti-glare position by moving the lever A towards the back of the car.

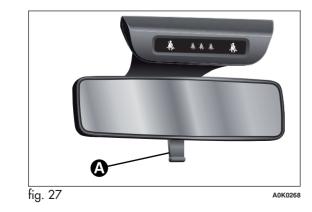
# Electrochromic interior mirror

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The electrochromic rear view mirror fig. 28 comes with an adjustment device to automatically prevent dazzling effects due to following cars. This function is set as default.

When reverse gear is engaged, the mirror is automatically set for daytime use.

When reverse gear is engaged, the mirror is automatically set for daytime use.





46

### DOOR MIRRORS



As the driver's door mirror is curved, it may slightly alter the perception of distance.

#### **Mirror adjustment**

The mirrors can only be adjusted/folded with the ignition in the MAR position.

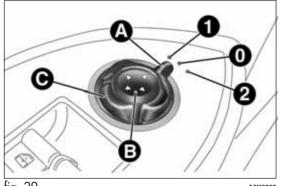
Choose the desired mirror using device A fig. 29:

□ device in position 1: left mirror selected

□ device in position 2: right mirror selected.

To adjust the selected mirror, press B button in the four directions shown by the arrows.

IMPORTANT Once adjustment is complete, rotate device A to position 0 to prevent accidental movements.



#### fig. 29

A0K0066

## **Electric mirror folding**

(for versions/markets, where provided)

To fold back the mirrors press C fig. 29. Press the button again to restore the mirrors to the driving position.

### Mirror manual folding

If necessary, fold the mirrors by moving them from position 1 to position 2 fig. 30.

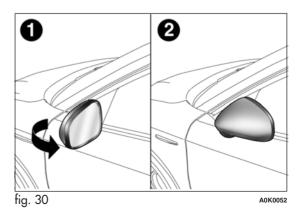
IMPORTANT When driving the mirrors must always be in position 1.



SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY



SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS



SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND

MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL

SPECIFICATIONS

DRIVING

# **CLIMATE CONTROL**

# SIDE AIR DIFFUSERS

A - Adjustable and directable side air diffusers:

use device B to adjust the diffuser to the required position fig. 31;
 turn wheel C left to adjust the air flow.
 Fixed side air diffuser.

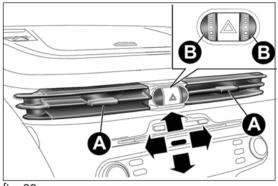
# **CENTRAL AIR DIFFUSERS**

Use device A fig. 32 to adjust the diffusers to the desired position. Turn wheels B downwards to adjust the air flow.

# UPPER AIR DIFFUSERS

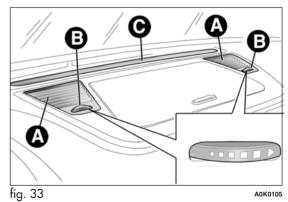
A - Upper adjustable air diffusers. Turn wheels B fig. 33 right to adjust the air flow.

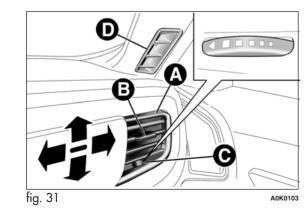
C - Fixed upper air diffuser.





A0K0104



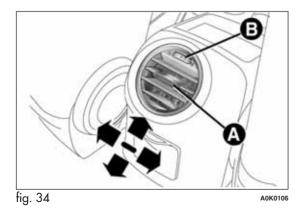


# REAR AIR DIFFUSER

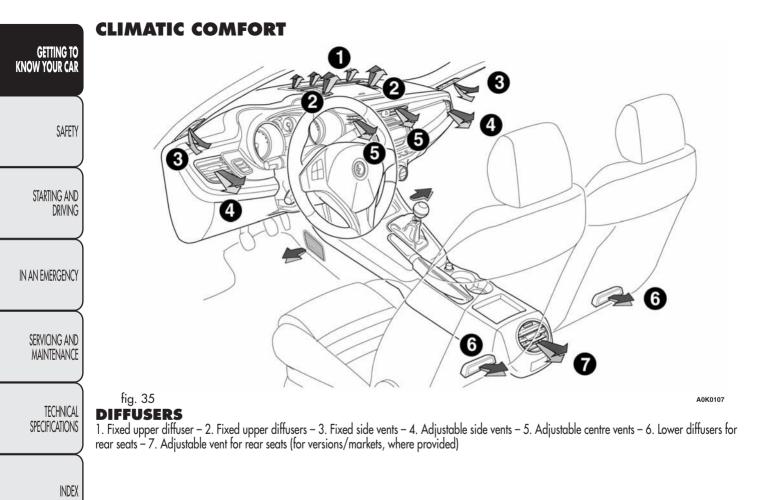
(for versions/markets, where provided)

Use device A fig. 34 to adjust the diffuser to the desired position. Turn wheel B right to adjust the air flow:

- = Completely closed
- $\mathbf{O}$  = Completely open

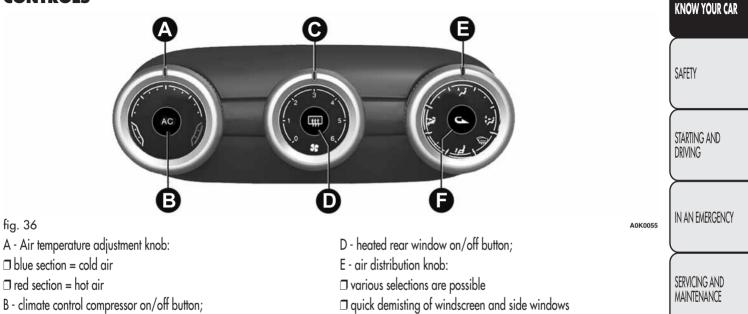






# **MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL**

### CONTROLS



- C fan activation/adjustment knob:
- $\Box 0 = \text{fan off}$

fig. 36

□ 1-2-3-4-5-6 = fan speed

- F air recirculation on/off button

**GETTING TO** 



SAFETY

# **CLIMATE CONTROL (cooling)**

Proceed as follows to cool the passenger compartment: □ turn knob A to blue section;

press button F to turn air recirculation on (circular LED around the button on);

🗆 turn knob E to ۶ ;

press button B to turn the climate control system on and turn C knob to at least 1 (1<sup>st</sup> speed); for faster action, turn knob C to 6 (maximum fan speed).

# Adjusting cooling

□ turn knob A rightwards to increase the temperature;

press button F to turn internal air recirculation off (circular LED around the button off);

□ turn knob C to reduce the fan speed.

# PASSENGER COMPARTMENT HEATING

Proceed as follows to rapidly heat the passenger compartment: □ turn knob A to the red section;

 $\square$  press button F to turn on the air recirculation system;

🗇 turn knob E to 👽 ;

□ turn knob C to 6 (maximum fan speed).

Then use the controls to maintain the desired comfort conditions and press button F to turn air recirculation off (circular LED around the button off) and prevent misting.

IMPORTANT When the engine is cold, it takes a few minutes to obtain fast heating.

# AUTOMATIC DEMISTING/DEFROSTING (MAX-DEF function)

This function activates automatic demisting/defrosting of: front windows (windscreen and side windows), heated nozzles, heated exterior rear view mirrors.

To activate the function, turn knob E to the "Defrosting" symbol identified by the  $\widehat{\mbox{\tiny HP}}$  symbol.

The manual climate control system will automatically set itself to the following configuration:

- □ the demisting symbol √₩ will turn from red to orange (to indicate that the function has been activated);
- □ the heated rear window (and all defrosting devices in the car) will be turned on. The circular LED around the [ŢŢŢ] button will light up to indicate that the function has been activated;
- $\Box$  the air flow will go to maximum speed (6);
- □ air circulation will be opened, if it was closed (the circular LED around the corresponding button will be off);
- □ air mixing will go to "maximum heat";
- □ the additional electric heater (for versions/markets, where provided) will be turned on;
- □ the compressor will be activated (the circular LED will switch on to indicate that the AC function is on).

IN AN EMERGENCY

STARTING AND

DRIVING

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

SERVICING AND

MAINTENANCE

### Window demisting

The climate control system is very useful in preventing the windows from misting up in the event of high levels of humidity.

In the event of considerable outside moisture and/or rain and/or considerable differences in temperature inside and outside the passenger compartment, proceed as follows to demist the windows:

- press button F to turn internal air recirculation off (circular LED around the button off);
- □ turn knob E to ↔ with the possibility of moving it to position ↔ (B fig. 37) if demisting does not occur;

 $\Box$  turn knob C to the 2<sup>nd</sup> speed.

#### HEATED REAR WINDOW DEMISTING/DEFROSTING

Press button D ( $[\underline{f},\underline{f},\underline{f},\underline{f}]$ ) to turn the function on/off. The function is automatically deactivated after 20 minutes.

For versions/markets where provided, press the [555] button to activate demisting/defrosting of exterior rear view mirrors and heated nozzles (for versions/markets, where provided).

IMPORTANT Do not affix stickers to the inside of the heated rear window over the heating filaments, to avoid damage that might cause them to stop working properly.

# INTERNAL AIR RECIRCULATION

Press button F (\_\_\_\_\_) so that the LED around the button turns on. It is advisable to switch air recirculation on while standing in traffic or in tunnels to prevent the introduction of polluted air.

Do not use the function for a long time, particularly if there are many passengers on board, to prevent the windows from misting up.

IMPORTANT Internal air recirculation makes it possible to reach the required heating or cooling conditions more quickly depending on the mode selected. Do not use the air recirculation function on rainy/cold days as it would considerably increase the possibility of the windows misting.

# SETTING THE AIR DISTRIBUTION

Turn knob E fig. 36 to manually select one of the four possible air distribution settings in the passenger compartment:

- Air flow to the windscreen and front side window diffusers to demist/defrost them.
- ✓ Air flow to the front/rear footwell diffusers. This air distribution allows the passenger compartment to be warmed up quickly.
- ↔ Air flow distribution between front and rear diffusers, centre/side dashboard diffusers, rear diffuser and windscreen and front side window demisting/defrosting diffusers.
- ➢ Air flow distribution to centre/side dashboard diffusers (passenger's body).

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

SPECIFICATIONS

TECHNICAL



fig. 37 A0K0183

There are also another 4 positions (see diagram below fig. 37):

trom misting up.

(cooler air).

description in previous pages).

(Position A) Air flow distribution between centre/side dashboard

demisting/defrosting diffusers. This distribution setting ventilates

vents, rear diffuser and windscreen and front side window

the passenger compartment well and prevents the windows

(Position B) Air flow distributed between footwell diffusers and

This distribution setting allows the passenger compartment to warm up efficiently and prevents the windows from misting up.

(Position D) Automatic demisting/defrosting activation (see

windscreen and front side window defrosting/demisting diffusers.

(Position C) Air flow distribution between footwell diffusers (hotter air) and centre/side dashboard diffusers and rear diffuser

## START& STOP

### Manual climate control

If the Start&Stop function is activated (engine off when the car speed is zero), the system keeps the air flow selected by the user.

In these conditions, the compartment cooling and heating cannot be guaranteed, as the compressor stops with the engine coolant pump. The Start&Stop function can be deactivated to enhance the operation of the climate control system by pressing the dedicated button on the dashboard

Note In winter, the climate control system must be turned on at least once a month for about 10 minutes. Have the system checked by Alfa Romeo Authorized Services before summer.

# SERVICING MAINTENANCE

In winter, the climate control system must be turned on at least once a month for about 10 minutes.

Have the system checked by Alfa Romeo Authorized Services before summer.

# AUTOMATIC DUAL ZONE CLIMATE CONTROL

(for versions/markets, where provided)

#### CONTROLS

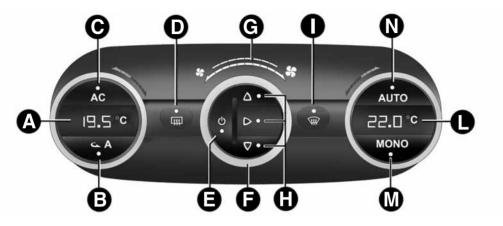


fig. 38

- A driver side temperature adjustment knob;
- B internal air recirculation on/off button;
- C climate control system compressor on/off button;
- D heated rear window on/off button;
- E climate control on/off button;
- F fan speed adjustment knob;
- G Fan speed indicator LED;
- H air distribution selection buttons;

#### A0K0056

I - MAX-DEF function (rapid defrosting/demisting of front windows), heated rear window and heated exterior mirrors (for versions/markets, where provided) activation button;

- L passenger side temperature adjustment knob;
- M MONO function activation button (alignment of set temperatures) driver/passenger side;
- N AUTO function activation button (automatic operation).

IN AN EMERGENCY

STARTING AND

DRIVING

**GETTING TO** 

SAFETY

KNOW YOUR CAR

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### DESCRIPTION

**GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR The automatic dual zone climate control system regulates the air temperatures in the passenger compartment in two areas: driver side and passenger side.

The system maintains comfort inside the passenger compartment and compensates for possible variations in external climate conditions.

**Note** The reference temperature is 22°C for optimal comfort management.

The automatically controlled parameters and functions are:

 $\square$  air temperature at the driver's/front passenger side vents;

 $\square$  air distribution at the driver's/front passenger side vents;

 $\Box$  fan speed (continuous variation of the air flow);

□ compressor engagement (for cooling/dehumidifying the air); □ air recirculation.

All these functions can be adjusted manually by operating the system and selecting one or more functions and modifying their parameters. Automatic control of the manually changed functions will be suspended: the system will only override the settings for safety reasons.

Manual selections always have higher priority than automatic settings and are stored until the AUTO button is pressed, except for cases in which the system intervenes for safety reasons.

You can adjust one function manually without affecting the automatic control of the others. The amount of air introduced into the passenger compartment is not affected by vehicle speed; it is electronically controlled by a fan.

The air temperature is always automatically controlled according to the temperature set on the display (except for when the system is off or in certain conditions when the compressor is not running).

The system allows the following to be set or adjusted manually:

- □ driver's/passenger side air temperature;
- $\Box$  fan speed (continuous variation);
- □ air distribution pattern with 7 positions;
- □ compressor enabling;
- □ rapid defrosting/demisting function;
- $\Box$  air recirculation;
- □ heated rear window;
- $\square$  system deactivation.

The climate control system detects the passenger compartment temperature through a mean radiant temperature sensor installed in a cover under the rear view mirror; if the cone of this sensor is obstructed by any object, the system may not work correctly.

# SWITCHING ON THE CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM

The climate control system can be switched on in different ways: we recommend pressing the AUTO button and turning the knobs to set the desired temperatures.

In this way the system operates completely automatically to adjust the temperature, quantity and distribution of the air introduced into the passenger compartment. It also manages the air recirculation system and the activation of the air conditioning compressor.

SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND

MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL

INDEX

SPECIFICATIONS

DRIVING

During automatic operation, you can change the set temperatures, air distribution and fan speed at any time by using the relevant buttons or knobs: the system will automatically change the settings to adjust to the new requirements.

During fully automatic operation (AUTO), the word AUTO will disappear if the air distribution and/or flow rate and/or engagement of the compressor and/or recirculation settings are changed.

During fully automatic operation (FULL AUTO), the word FULL will disappear if the air distribution and/or flow rate and/or activation of the compressor and/or recirculation settings are changed.

In this way the climate control system will continue to automatically manage all functions except for those that have been manually adjusted. The fan speed is the same in all the zones of the passenger compartment.

# **ADJUSTING THE AIR TEMPERATURE**

Turn the A or L knob right or left to adjust the air temperature: A knob for the front left-hand area, L knob for the front right-hand area of the passenger compartment. The set temperatures are shown on the displays.

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Press}}$  the MONO button to align the air temperature between the two areas:

Turn the L knob to return to the separate management of air temperatures in the two zones.

Turn the knobs fully right or left to engage HI (maximum heating) or LO (maximum cooling) respectively. To deactivate these functions, turn the temperature knob to the desired temperature.

# SETTING THE AIR DISTRIBUTION

By pressing the buttons ( $\land / \bigtriangledown / \triangleright$ ), it is possible to set one of the 7 possible air distributions manually:

- △ Air flow to the windscreen and front side window diffusers to demist/defrost them.
- $\,\triangleright\,\,$  Air flow at central and side dashboard vents to ventilate the chest and the face during the hot season.
- ✓ Air flow to the front and rear footwell diffusers. This air distribution setting heats the passenger compartment most quickly, giving a prompt sensation of warmth.
- Air flow distributed between footwell vents (hotter air) and central and side dashboard vents (cooler air). This distribution setting is useful in spring and autumn on sunny days.
- △ ▽ Air flow distributed between footwell diffusers and windscreen and front side window defrosting/demisting diffusers. This distribution setting allows the passenger compartment to warm up efficiently and prevents the windows from misting up.
- △ ▷ Air flow distribution between windscreen demisting/ defrosting diffusers and side and central dashboard vents. This allows air to be sent to the windscreen in conditions of strong sunlight.
- $\bigtriangleup$   $\vartriangleright$   $\bigtriangledown$  Air flow distribution to all vents on the car.

In AUTO mode, the climate control system automatically manages air distribution (the LEDs on buttons H are off). When set manually, the air distribution is shown by the LEDs on the selected buttons.

#### GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

DRIVING

In combined function mode, functions are enabled together with those already set when the relevant button is pressed. If a button whose function is already active is pressed, the operation is cancelled and the corresponding LED switches off. To restore automatic control of the air distribution after a manual selection, press the AUTO button.

# **ADJUSTING THE FAN SPEED**

Turn knob F to increase/decrease the fan speed. The speed is indicated by the LEDs G on knob F.

□ maximum fan speed = all LEDs lit;

□ minimum fan speed = one LED lit.

The fan can only be excluded if the climate control compressor has been switched off by pressing button C.

IMPORTANT To restore automatic control of the fan speed after a manual adjustment, press the AUTO button.

# **AUTO BUTTON**

By pressing the AUTO button (LED on button lit) the climate control system automatically adjusts the following settings in the corresponding zones:

 quantity and distribution of the air introduced into the passenger compartment;

□ climate control compressor;

🗆 air recirculation

🗖 cancelling any previous manual settings.

This is indicated by the LED on the AUTO button switching on.

By manually adjusting at least one of the functions automatically managed by the system (air recirculation, air distribution, fan speed or switching off the air conditioner compressor), the LED will switch off, indicating that the system is no longer automatically controlling all the functions.

IMPORTANT Should the system no longer be able to guarantee the required temperature set in various passenger compartment zones, the set temperature value will flash for a few seconds.

To restore automatic control of the system after one or more manual adjustments, press the AUTO button.

# **MONO BUTTON**

Press the MONO button (LED on button lit) to align the passenger side air temperature with that of the driver side.

This function makes temperature regulation easier when the driver is travelling alone.

Turn knob L to set the passenger side temperature and return to separate air temperature management.

#### AIR RECIRCULATION AND ENABLEMENT OF AQS FUNCTION (Air Quality System)

The air recirculation is managed according to the following operating logics:

- automatic activation: text A on button B lit;
- □ forced activation (inside air recirculation always on): indicated by the LED on the button A and text A off;
- □ forced deactivation (air recirculation always off, air drawn in from the outside): indicated by the LED on the to buttons A switching off and text A on button B off.

Forced activation/deactivation can be selected by pressing the Low button A.

When the  $\Phi$  button is pressed (button E off), the climate control system automatically activates internal air recirculation (LED on the

button A on). It is still possible to activate outside air recirculation (LED on the button off) and vice versa, by pressing the button A.

The AQS (Air Quality System) function cannot be activated when the O button is pressed (LED on button E off).

### AQS (Air Quality System) function activation

The AQS function automatically activates internal air recirculation when the outside air is polluted (e.g. in traffic queues and tunnels).

IMPORTANT With the AQS function active, after a preset time interval of the internal air recirculation system functioning, the climate control system enables the intake of outside air for approximately one minute to change the air in the passenger compartment. This takes place regardless of the pollution level of the outside air. IMPORTANT The engagement of the recirculation system makes it possible to reach the required heating/cooling conditions faster. It is, however, inadvisable to use it on rainy/cold days as it would considerably increase the possibility of the windows misting up inside (especially if the climate control system is off). When the outside temperature is low, recirculation is forced off (air drawn in from the outside) to prevent the windows from misting up.

In automatic operation, recirculation is managed automatically by the system according to outside environmental conditions.



It is advisable not to use the air recirculation function when the outside temperature is low to prevent the windows from rapidly misting up.

# **CLIMATE CONTROL COMPRESSOR**

Press button C to activate/deactivate the compressor (activation is indicated by the lit LED on the button). The system remembers that the compressor has been switched off, even after the engine has stopped.

When the compressor is switched off the system deactivates air recirculation to prevent the windows from misting up and deactivates the AQS function. In this case, although the system is capable of maintaining the required temperature, the AUTO LED switches off.

The temperatures will instead flash for a few seconds if the required temperature cannot be maintained.

To restore automatic control of compressor engagement, press button C again or press the AUTO button.

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR SAFETY STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICA

SPECIFICATIONS

With compressor off:

if the outside temperature is higher than the set one, the system will not be able to satisfy the request. The temperature values will then flash on the display for a few seconds to indicate this;

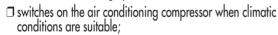
 $\Box$  the fan speed can be reset manually.

With the compressor on and the engine running, manual ventilation cannot be lower than the minimum speed (only one LED lit).

IMPORTANT With the climate control compressor off, air cannot be introduced to the passenger compartment with a temperature lower than the outside temperature; moreover, under certain environmental conditions, windows could mist rapidly since the air is not dehumidified.

### RAPID WINDOW DEMISTING/ DEFROSTING (MAX-DEF function)

Press the  $\overleftarrow{\text{virr}}$  button to activate (LED on button on) the windscreen and side window demisting/defrosting function. The climate control system carries out the following operations:



deactivates air recirculation;

□ sets maximum air temperature (HI) in both zones;

□ sets fan speed according to the engine coolant temperature;

□ directs air flow to windscreen and front side windows diffusers; □ activates the heated rear window.

🗇 displays the fan speed (LED G lit).

IMPORTANT The MAX-DEF function remains on for about 3 minutes from when the engine coolant reaches the appropriate temperature.

When the function is activated, the LED on the AUTO button switches off. With the function activated the only possible manual adjustments are adjusting the fan speed and turning the heated rear window off.

When the B, C,  $\overleftarrow{\rm WP}$  or AUTO buttons are pressed, the climate control system will turn the MAX-DEF off.

#### HEATED REAR WINDOW DEMISTING/DEFROSTING

Press the trans button to activate (LED on button on) heated rear window demisting/defrosting. This function switches off automatically after about 20 minutes or when the engine is turned off. It is not switched on automatically the next time the engine is started.

For versions/markets where provided, press the [\_\_\_\_\_] button to activate demisting/defrosting of exterior rear view mirrors and heated nozzles (for versions/markets, where provided).

IMPORTANT Do not affix stickers to the inside of the heated rear window over the heating filaments, to avoid damage that might cause them to stop working properly.

### Thermal comfort windscreen

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Some versions feature a thermal comfort windscreen which, with the car exposed to the sun, reduces the temperature in the passenger compartment relative to the outside temperature, thus ensuring greater comfort.

### Humidity sensor

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The humidity sensor helps to prevent the windows from misting up. For full functionality, it is advisable to activate the AUTO function (LED N on).

60

When the outside temperature is low, the system could automatically turn the compressor on and turn air recirculation off for safer driving.

# TURNING THE CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM OFF

Press the  $\bigcirc$  button (LED on button off).

With climate control off:

□ air recirculation is on, thus isolating the passenger compartment from the outside;

 $\Box$  the compressor is off;

□ the fan is off;

 $\hfill\square$  the heated rear window can be switched on or off;

 $\Box$  the AQS (Air Quality System) function cannot be activated.

IMPORTANT The climate control system control unit stores the temperatures set before the system was switched off and restores them when any button of the system is pressed (except for button D).

To restart the climate control system in fully automatic mode press the AUTO button.

# START&STOP

### **Automatic Climate Control**

The automatic climate control system manages the Start&Stop function (engine off when speed is zero) to ensure adequate comfort inside the car.

Specifically, the Start&Stop function is turned off when the weather is particularly hot or cold to guarantee an adequate level of comfort inside the passenger compartment; therefore, the engine will not be stopped during these transient conditions, even if the speed is zero.

When the Start&Stop function is active (engine off at zero car speed), the climate control system will request the reactivation of the engine if the inside temperature conditions rapidly deteriorate (or if the user requests maximum cooling -LO - or quick demisting -MAX DEF).

With the Start&Stop function on (engine off at zero speed), air flow is reduced to the minimum to maintain comfort conditions inside the passenger compartment as long as possible when the system is in AUTO mode (LED N on).

The climate control system control unit attempts to manage the discomfort caused by the engine stopping (compressor and engine coolant pump off) but operation of the climate control system can be enhanced by turning the Start&Stop off by pressing the dedicated button on the dashboard.

**Note** In particularly severe climate conditions it is recommended to limit the use of the Start&Stop function to prevent the compressor from continuously switching on and off, with consequent rapid misting of the windows and accumulation of humidity with unpleasant smells in the passenger compartment.

**Note** When the Start&Stop function is on (engine off and vehicle speed zero), the automatic recirculation management is turned off always taking air in from outside, to reduce the probability of window misting up (as the compressor is off).

# ADDITIONAL HEATER

(for versions/markets, where provided)

This allows the passenger compartment to be heated more quickly in cold weather conditions. The additional heater turns off automatically after the required comfort conditions are achieved.

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS



# Automatic dual zone climate control system

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The additional heater activates automatically depending on the environmental conditions and with engine started.

# Manual climate control system

The additional heater activates automatically when knob A is turned to the end of the red section and the fan is set to at least 1<sup>st</sup> speed.

IMPORTANT The heater only works if the outside temperature and engine coolant temperature are low. The heater will not activate if the battery voltage is too low.

# **EXTERIOR LIGHTS**

# LEFT STALK

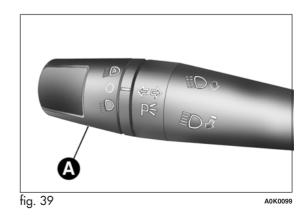
The left stalk fig. 39 operates most of the exterior lights. The external lights can only be switched on when the ignition key is at MAR.

The instrument panel and the various controls on the dashboard will come on when the external lights are switched on.

#### DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS (DRL) "Daytime Running Lights"

With the ignition key at MAR and ring nut A fig. 39 turned to  ${\rm O}$  , the daytime running lights switch on. The other lights and interior lighting stay off.

For daytime running light functionality, see the "Menu Items" paragraph in this section. If the function is deactivated, no lights are switched on when ring nut A is turned to  ${\bf O}$ .



#### SIDE LIGHTS/DIPPED BEAM HEADLIGHTS

With the ignition key turned to MAR, turn ring nut A fig. 39 to ≣D. The daytime running lights are switched off and the side lights and dipped headlights are switched on. The warning light  $\ge 0$   $o \le =$  switches on on the instrument panel.

### **PARKING LIGHTS**

These lights can only be switched on with ignition key at STOP or removed, by moving ring nut A fig. 39 first to position O and then to position ≣C

The warning light  $\ge 0$  o  $\le$  switches on on the instrument panel.

When the direction indicator stalk is activated the side for the lights (left or right) can be selected.

# **AUTOMATIC LIGHTING CONTROL** (AUTOLIGHT) (Dusk sensor) (for versions/markets, where provided)

This infrared LED sensor, combined with the rain sensor and located on the windscreen, detects the variations in outside brightness depending on the light sensitivity set with the Set-up Menu: the greater the sensitivity, the less external light is required to activate the exterior lights.

## Activation

The dusk sensor activates when ring nut A fig. 39 is turned to ≣@ . In this way the side lights and dipped headlights are activated automatically according to the external light level.

IMPORTANT The sensor is unable to detect the presence of fog. Therefore under these circumstances, these lights must be turned on manually.

When the lights are turned on by the sensor, the fog lights (for versions/markets, where provided) and the rear fog lights may be turned on.

When the lights are automatically switched off, the front and rear fog lights (if activated) are also switched off. The next time the lights are switched on automatically, the fog lights must be reactivated manually (if required).

With the sensor active, it is possible to flash the headlights but the main beam headlights cannot be switched on. If you need to turn these lights on, turn ring nut A to position ≣○ and turn the dipped headlights on.

When the lights have been activated automatically and are then switched off by the sensor, the dipped beam headlights are switched off first, followed by the side lights a few seconds later.

If the sensor is activated but is malfunctioning, the side lights and dipped beam headlights are switched on irrespective of the outside light level and the sensor failure is indicated on the instrument panel display.

It is also possible to deactivate the sensor and switch on these lights if necessary.

**GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

#### GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND

MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

DRIVING

### MAIN BEAM HEADLIGHTS

With ring nut A at  ${\equiv}$  pull the stalk towards the steering wheel (stable position). The warning light  ${\equiv}$  switches on on the instrument panel. To turn the lights off, pull the stalk towards the steering wheel (dipped headlights will stay on). It is not possible to switch on the main beam headlights in fixed mode if the automatic lighting control system is active.

# FLASHING

Pull the stalk towards the steering wheel (unstable position) regardless of the position of ring nut A. The warning light  $\equiv \bigcirc$  switches on on the instrument panel.

# **DIRECTION INDICATORS**

Bring the stalk into (stable) position:

🗆 upwards: activates right direction indicator;

🗆 downwards: activates left direction indicator.

Warning light ⇒ or ⇐ will flash in the instrument panel. The indicators are switched off automatically when the steering wheel is straightened.

# "Lane change" function

If you want to signal that you are changing lane, hold the left stalk in the unstable position for less than half a second. The direction indicator on the side selected will flash five times and then switch off automatically.

# "FOLLOW ME HOME" DEVICE

This device allows you to illuminate the area in front of the car for a certain amount of time.

# Activation

With the ignition key at STOP or removed, pull stalk A towards the steering wheel and move it within 2 minutes of the engine switching off.

At each single movement of the stalk, the lights will remain on for an extra 30 seconds up to a maximum of 210 seconds; then the lights are switched off automatically.

The  $\exists \mathbf{o} \mathbf{o} \exists$  warning light on the instrument panel will light up (and the corresponding message will appear on the display) as long as the function is active.

The light comes on when the stalk is first moved and stays on until the function is automatically deactivated. Each movement of the stalk only increases the amount of time the lights stay on.

### Deactivation

Keep stalk A pulled towards the steering wheel for more than 2 seconds.

# **EXTERNAL COURTESY LIGHTS**

This function lights up the car and the space in front of it when the doors are unlocked.

### Activation

When the car is parked and the doors are unlocked by pressing the button on the remote control (or the luggage compartment is unlocked by pressing  $\clubsuit$ ), the dipped headlights, side lights and number plate lights are activated.

The lights remain lit for approximately 25 seconds unless the doors and boot are locked again with the remote control or the doors or boot are opened and reclosed. In these cases they go out after 5 seconds.

The exterior courtesy lights can be enabled/disabled using the Setup Menu (see the paragraph "Menu Items" in this chapter).

# WINDOW CLEANING

### WINDSCREEN WASHER/WIPER

The right stalk controls windscreen wiper/washer and rear window wiper/washer operation.

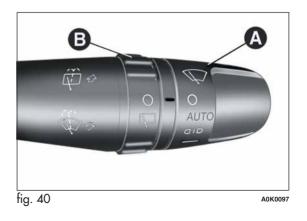
This operates only with the ignition key turned to MAR.

Ring nut A fig. 40 has the following positions:

• windscreen wipers off;

**ap** intermittent operation (low speed);

- **AUTO** rain sensor activation (for versions/markets, where provided) (the windscreen wipers adapt the operating speed automatically to suit the intensity of the rain)
- aid intermittent operation;
- continuous slow operation;
  - continuous fast operation.



#### GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

**GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR Move the stalk upwards (unstable position) to limit operation to the time for which the stalk is held in this position. When released, the stalk will return to its default position and the wiper will be automatically stopped.

SAFETY

snow or ice from the windscreen. In such conditions, the windscreen wiper may be subjected to excessive stress and the motor protection, which prevents operation for a few seconds, may intervene. If operation is not restored, even after turning the key and restarting the engine, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.



Do not operate the windscreen wiper with the blades lifted from the windscreen.

Do not use the windscreen wiper to remove layers of

### "Smart washing" function

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

IN AN EMERGENCY

STARTING AND DRIVING

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Pull the lever towards the steering wheel (unstable position) to operate the windscreen washer. Keep the stalk pulled for more than half a second, with just one movement, to operate windscreen washer/wiper jet at the same time. The wiper stops working three strokes after the stalk is released. A further stroke after approximately 6 seconds completes the cycle.

INDEX

### RAIN SENSOR

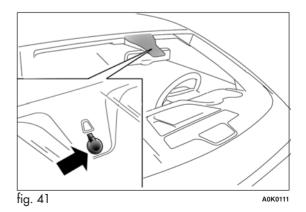
(for versions/markets, where provided)

This is an infra-red LED sensor fitted on the car windscreen fig. 41. It is able to detect the presence of rain and consequently manage windscreen wiping in accordance with the amount of water on the windscreen

### Activation

The sensor is activated when ring nut A fig. 40 is turned to "automatic" position ("AUTO" control): the windscreen wiper stroke frequency is thus adjusted in accordance with the amount of water on the windscreen

This frequency can vary from no stroke (no rain - windscreen dry) up to the 2<sup>nd</sup> constant speed operation (heavy rain - windscreen wet). The sensitivity of the rain sensor can be adjusted through the Set-up menu (see paragraph "Menu Items" in this section).



If the engine is stopped with the lever in "automatic" position, when it is next started no wiping cycle will take place even if it is raining. This prevents accidental activation of the rain sensor when the engine is started (e.g. when the windscreen is being washed by hand or the wipers are stuck to the windscreen when there is ice).

To restore automatic operation of the rain sensor, turn the ring nut on the right stalk A fig. 40 from automatic position (AUTO) to  $\mathbf{O}$  position and then turn A ring nut back to the AUTO position.

When the rain sensor is reactivated using any of the manoeuvres described above, reactivation is indicated by a single stroke of the windscreen wipers, regardless of the condition of the windscreen.

If the sensitivity is changed whilst the rain sensor is operating, a windscreen wiper stroke is carried out to confirm the change.

In the event of malfunction of the rain sensor whilst it is active, the windscreen wiper operates intermittently at a speed consistent with the sensitivity setting of the rain sensor, regardless of whether there is rain on the glass (sensor failure is indicated on the display).

The sensor continues to operate and it is possible to set the windscreen wiper to continuous mode (1<sup>st</sup> or 2<sup>nd</sup> speed). The failure indication remains for as long as the sensor is active.

### **REAR WINDOW WASHER/WIPER**

(for versions/markets, where provided)

### Activation

This operates only with the ignition key turned to MAR.

Turn ring nut B fig. 40 from position  ${\pmb O}$  to position  ${\pmb \bigtriangledown}$  to operate the rear window wiper as follows:

□ in intermittent mode when the windscreen wiper is not operating;

- □ in synchronous mode (at half the speed of the windscreen wiper) when the windscreen wiper is operating;
- □ in continuous mode with reverse gear engaged and the control active.

With reverse gear engaged and windscreen wiper on, the rear window wiper is activated in continuous mode. Pushing the stalk towards the dashboard (unstable position) will activate the rear window washer jet.

Keep the stalk pushed for more than half a second to activate the rear window wiper as well. Releasing the stalk will activate the smart washing function, as described for the windscreen wiper.

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

#### GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND

MAINTENANCE

TECHNICA

INDEX

SPECIFICATIONS

DRIVING

# **CRUISE CONTROL**

(for versions/markets, where provided)

# **GENERAL INFORMATION**

This is an electronically controlled driving assistance device which allows driving at a chosen speed above 30 km/h on long stretches of dry, straight roads with few variations (e.g. motorways), without having to depress the accelerator pedal.

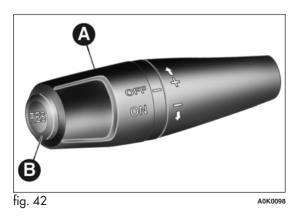
The use of this device on extra-urban roads with traffic is not therefore recommended. Do not use it in town.

# TURNING THE DEVICE ON

Turn ring nut A fig. 42 to ON.

The device cannot be engaged in  $1^{\,\rm st}$  or reverse gear: it is advisable to engage it in  $5^{\rm th}$  gear or higher.

When travelling downhill with the device engaged, the car may slightly exceed the stored speed.



When the device is activated, the  $\mathfrak{S}$  warning light switches on together with the relevant message on the display (for versions/ markets, where provided).

# STORING THE CAR SPEED

Proceed as follows:

- □ turn ring nut A fig. 42 to ON and press the accelerator to reach the required speed.
- move the stalk upwards (+) for at least 1 second, then release it: the car speed is now memorised and you can therefore release the accelerator.

If needed (when overtaking for instance), you can accelerate simply by pressing the accelerator; when you release the pedal, the car goes back to the speed set previously.

# **RESTORING THE MEMORISED SPEED**

If the device has been disengaged by pressing the brake or clutch pedal, the stored speed can be reset as follows:

□ accelerate gradually until a speed approaching the one stored is reached;

 $\Box$  engage the gear selected at the time that the speed was stored;

 $\Box$  press the RES button (B fig. 42).

# INCREASING THE MEMORISED SPEED

Press the accelerator and store the new speed or move the lever upwards (+).

Each movement of the stalk corresponds to an increase in speed of about 1 km/h, while keeping the stalk held upwards will continuously increase the speed.

# **REDUCING THE MEMORISED SPEED**

Deactivate the device and store the new speed or move the lever downwards (-) until the new speed is reached. It will then be stored automatically.

Each movement of the lever corresponds to a slight reduction in speed of about 1 km/h, while keeping the stalk held downwards will decrease the speed continuously.

### TURNING THE DEVICE OFF

To disengage the device:

- turn ring nut A fig. 42 to OFF;

or

- switch the engine off;

#### or

- press the brake pedal, the clutch or the accelerator; in this last case the system is not effectively disengaged but the system gives priority to the acceleration request. The device still remains active, without the need to press the RES button to return to the previous conditions once acceleration is concluded.

#### Automatic deactivation

The device deactivates automatically in the following cases: □ if the ABS or ESC systems intervene; □ with the car speed below the set limit; □ in the event of system failure.



When travelling with the device active, never move the gear lever to neutral.



If operation is inadequate or the device is faulty, turn ring nut A fig. 42 to OFF and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

GETTI	NG TO	
(NO)	N YOU	R CAF

STARTING AND DRIVING

SAFETY

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

#### GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND

DRIVING

# **ROOF LIGHTS**

# FRONT ROOF LIGHT

Switch A fig. 43 switches the roof lights on/off.

A switch positions:

□ central position (position 1): lights C and D switch on/off when the doors are opened/closed.

□ pressed to the left (position 0): lights C and D are always switched off;

pressed to the right (position 2): lights C and D are always switched on.

Lights switch on/off progressively.

switch B controls the spot light function.

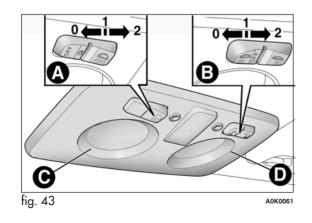
B switch positions:

□ central position (position 1): lights C and D are always switched off;

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

IN AN EMERGENCY

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS



 $\Box$  pressed to the left (position 0): light C switches on;  $\Box$  pressed to the right (position 2): light D switches on.

IMPORTANT Before getting out of the car, make sure that both switches are in the central position: when the doors are closed the lights will switch off to avoid draining the battery.

In any case, if the switch is left inadvertently in the permanently on position, the roof light will turn off automatically 15 minutes after the engine stopping.

# **ROOF LIGHT TIMING**

On certain versions, to facilitate getting in/out of the car at night or in poorly-lit areas, two timed modes have been provided.

# Timing when getting into the car

The roof lights switch on according to the following modes: ☐ for about 10 seconds when the doors are unlocked; ☐ for about 3 minutes when one of the doors is opened; ☐ for about 10 seconds when the doors are closed. The timed period is interrupted when the ignition key is turned to MAR.

# Timing when getting out of the car

After removing the key from the ignition switch, the roof lights switch on as follows:

within 2 minutes of the engine being switched off for a period of around 10 seconds;

□ for about 3 minutes when one of the doors is opened;

 $\square$  for about 10 seconds when one of the doors is closed.

The timing stops automatically when the doors are locked.

# **REAR ROOF LIGHT**

Press the cover A fig. 44 to switch the light on/off.

The light will stay on for a few seconds after the doors are closed and will then switch off automatically. The light switches off in any case when the ignition key is turned to MAR.

IMPORTANT The light switches off automatically after a few minutes if a door is left open. To switch it on again, open another door or close and reopen the same door.

# COURTESY LIGHTS

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Two courtesy roof lights B fig. 45 are present behind the sun visors. Lift cover A to turn the lights on. GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

fig. 44 Акооза

fig. 45 АКСИН

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

71



#### LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ROOF LIGHT

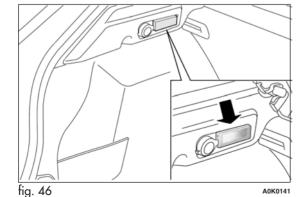
This is located on the left side of the luggage compartment fig. 46. This switches on automatically when the luggage compartment is opened and switches off when it is closed.

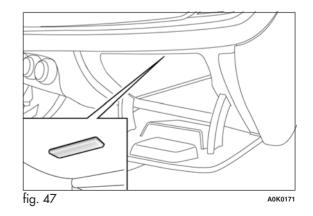
The light switches on/off regardless of the ignition key position.

# **GLOVE COMPARTMENT LIGHT**

This light comes on automatically when the glove compartment fig. 47 is opened and switches off when it is closed.

The light switches on/off regardless of the ignition key position.





72

# CONTROLS

# HAZARD WARNING LIGHTS

Press switch A fig. 48 to switch on/off the lights. Warning lights  $\Leftarrow$  and  $\Rightarrow$  on the instrument panel switch on and switch A flashes when the lights are on.



The use of hazard lights is governed by the Highway Code of the country you are in. Comply with legal requirements.

# **Emergency braking**

In the event of emergency braking the hazard warning lights are lit up automatically as well as the 🕁 and 🖒 warning lights in the panel. The lights switch off automatically when emergency braking ceases.

# FOG LIGHTS

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Press the  $\pm D$  fig. 49 button to switch the lights on/off. The  $\not\equiv 0$  warning light on the instrument panel and the LED on the button itself will light up when the lights are on.

### **REAR FOG LIGHTS**

fig. 49

Press the  $1 \pm 1$  fig. 49 button to switch the lights on/off.

The rear fog lights are only switched on with the dipped headlights or front fog lights on.

Press the button again to switch the lights off, or switch off the dipped headlights or the front fog lights (for versions/markets, where provided).

The ()≢ warning light on the instrument panel and the LED on the button itself will light up when the lights are on.





A0K0120

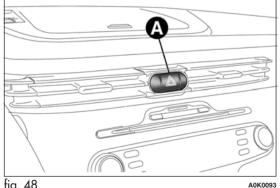
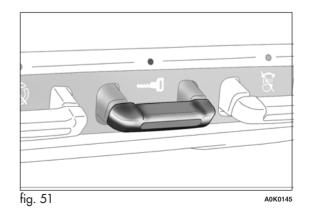


fig. 48

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR	AFS ADAPTIVE LIGHTS (Adaptive Frontlight System) (for versions/markets, where provided)
	This is a system combined with Xenon headlamps which directs the main light beam and adapts it to the driving conditions round bends/when cornering, continuously and automatically.
SAFETY	The system directs the light beam to light up the road in the best way, taking into account the speed of the vehicle, the bend/corner angle and the speed of steering.
STARTING AND DRIVING	The adaptive lights are automatically activated when the car is started. In these circumstances, LED A fig. 50 stays off. When the button is pressed the adaptive lights (if on) are deactivated and LED A switches on constantly.
IN AN EMERGENCY	Press the button again to turn the adaptive lights back on (LED off).
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE	
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS	
INDEX	fig. 50 доко123
74	0

# **CENTRAL LOCKING**

Press the \_\_\_\_ fig. 51 button to lock all the doors at the same time (the LED on the button will light up when the doors are locked). Locking takes place irrespective of the position of the ignition key.



# FUEL CUT-OFF SYSTEM

This intervenes in the case of an impact causing:

- □ the interruption of the fuel supply with the engine consequently cutting out;
- □ the automatic unlocking of the doors;
- $\hfill\square$  the interior lights being switched on.

The intervention of the system is indicated by a message shown on the display.

Carefully check the car for fuel leaks, for instance in the engine compartment, under the car or near the tank area.

After a collision, turn the ignition key to STOP to prevent the battery from running down.

To restore the correct operation of the car, proceed as follows:

turn the ignition key to the MAR position;

cactivate the right direction indicator;

cactivate the left direction indicator;

cactivate the left direction indicator;

cactivate the right direction indicator;

cactivate the right direction indicator;

cactivate the right direction indicator;

cactivate the left direction indicator;

cacti



If, after a collision, you smell fuel or notice leaks from the fuel system, do not reactivate the system to avoid fire risk.

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR
SAFETY
STARTING AND DRIVING
IN AN EMERGENCY
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS
INDEX



SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

DRIVING

# INTERIOR FITTINGS

# STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

#### Upper compartment

Operate in the point shown by the arrow to open the compartment A fig. 52.

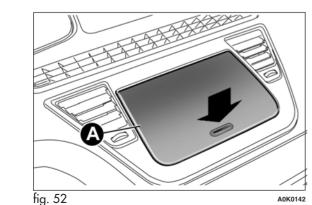
# Passenger side compartment

Operate handle A fig. 53 to open the compartment.

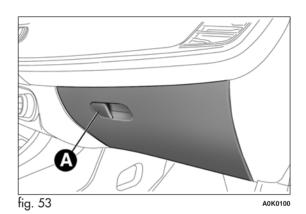
When the compartment is opened a courtesy light switches on.

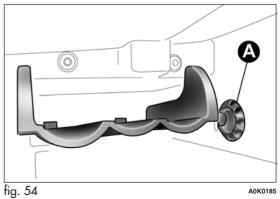
There is a document holder inside the compartment and an eyewear holder on the rear of the flap.

On some versions the compartments may be heated/cooled by an air vent connected to the climate control system (operate wheel A fig. 54 to adjust the air flow rate in the lower compartment).



In versions with dual zone automatic climate control system, the glove compartment is set to the same temperature as the passenger side. In some versions inside the glove compartment, on the passenger side, a bottle/can holder is also present (fig. 54).





There is space to hold  $1 \times 50$  cl bottle and  $2 \times$  slim cans simultaneously. The handbook can be inserted under the bottle holder with the longest side facing the front of the car.



Do not travel with the glove compartments open: they may injure the front seat occupants in the event of an accident.

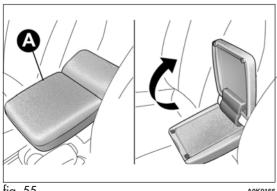
# FRONT ARMREST

(for versions/markets, where provided)

This is located between the front seats. To bring it to its standard use position, push it downwards.

The front armrest is equipped with an inner storage compartment.

To access the compartment, position the armrest in the standard use configuration (fully down) and then lift the cover with lining A fig. 55



For correct use of the armrest specific measures must be followed for the opening of the cover:

□ it must be opened only with armrest completely lowered;

□ to prevent content of the armrest from falling, the opening of the cover is inhibited in positions other than "completely lowered".

NOTE During the armrest tilting stage (complete tilting upwards or downwards), make sure the cover with lining is always closed correctly.



# **REAR ARMREST**

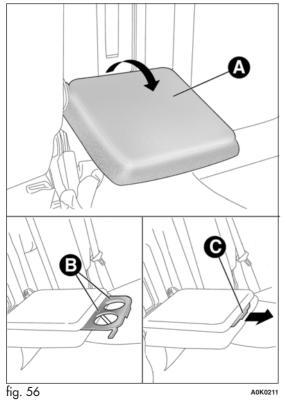
(for versions/markets, where provided)

To use armrest A fig. 56, lower it as shown in the figure.

There are two cup and/or can holders B in the armrest. To use these, pull tab C in the direction shown by the arrow.

SAFETY STARTING AND DRIVING IN AN EMERGENCY SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS INDEX fig. 56

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR



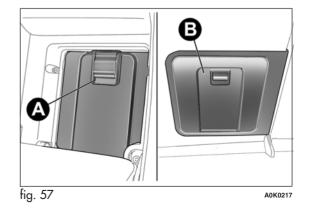
A storage compartment is available inside the armrest; this can be accessed by raising the flap.

# **SKI COMPARTMENT**

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The compartment may be used for carrying long loads.

To access the compartment, lower the rear armrest and then press device A fig. 57 to lower flap B.



# **POWER SOCKET**

This is located on the left side of the luggage compartment fig. 58. It only operates with the ignition key at MAR.

IMPORTANT Do not connect devices with power higher than 180 W to the socket. Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable adaptors.

#### **CIGAR LIGHTER**

This is located on the central tunnel. Press button A fig. 59 to activate the cigar lighter.

After a few seconds the button automatically returns to its initial position, and the cigarette lighter is ready for use.

IMPORTANT Always check that the cigar lighter is switched off.

IMPORTANT Do not connect devices with power higher than 180 W to the socket. Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable adaptors.



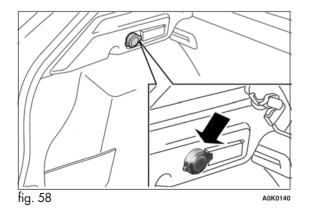


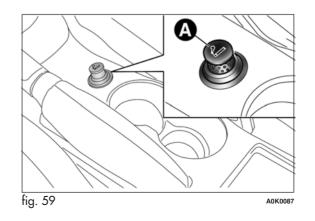
The cigar lighter gets very hot. Handle it carefully and make sure that children don't use it: risk of fire and/or burns.

STARTING AND DRIVING

SAFETY

IN AN EMERGENCY





SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

> TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

N	DE	X

79

### ASHTRAY

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING The ashtray is a removable spring-loaded plastic box that can be fitted into the cup/can holders on the central tunnel fig. 60



Do not use the ashtray as a waste paper basket: it may catch fire in contact with cigarette stubs.

# SUN VISORS

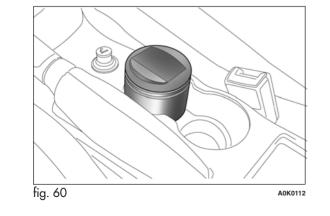
These are located at the sides of the interior rear view mirror. They can be adjusted forwards and sideways.

A courtesy mirror with roof light is fitted on the back of the visors. The light allows the mirror to be used even in poor visibility conditions. Lift cover A fig. 61 to access the mirror.

Servicing and Maintenance

IN AN EMERGENCY





# EXTINGUISHER

(for versions/markets, where provided)

This is located under the front passenger seat fig. 62.

**Note** On some versions, the extinguisher is located on the right side of the luggage compartment inside a suitable container.

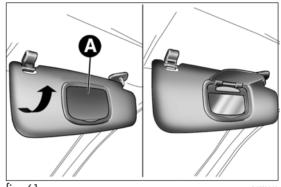
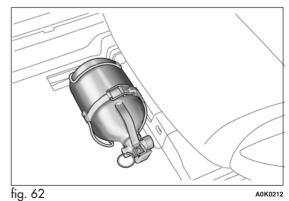


fig. 61

A0K0113



# **ELECTRIC SUN ROOF**

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The sun roof comprises two glass panels; the front one is mobile and the rear one fixed. These feature two sun blinds (front and rear) that can be moved manually.

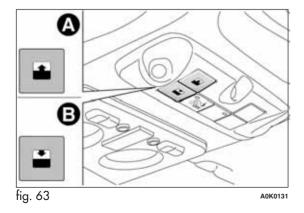
With the roof closed, the blinds can be placed in any position.

#### **OPERATION**

The sun roof can be operated only with the ignition key turned to MAR. The controls A and B fig. 63 on the trim next to the front courtesy light operate the sun roof opening/closing functions.

#### **Roof opening**

Press and hold down button A fig. 63. The front glass panel will move into the spoiler position. Press button A again and keep it pressed for more than half a second to automatically move the sun roof to an intermediate position ("Comfort" position).



If button A is pressed again for more than half a second, the roof will automatically continue until it reaches end of travel position. The front glass panel can be stopped in an intermediate position by pressing button A again.





Do not open the sunroof if there is snow or ice on it: you may damage it.

When leaving the vehicle, always remove the key from the ignition to avoid the risk of injury to those still inside the car due to accidental operation of the sunroof. Improper use of the roof can be dangerous. Before operation, always check that no-one is at risk of being injured by the moving sun roof or by objects getting caught and dragged by it.

### Closing the sun roof

With the roof in the fully open position, press button B fig. 63 and, if the button is operated for more than half a second, the front roof glass will automatically assume the intermediate position (comfort position). If the button is operated again for about half a second the roof will assume the spoiler position. Lastly, if closing button B is pressed again, the roof will move to completely closed position. STARTING AND DRIVING

SAFETY

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDFX



SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

DRIVING

# ANTI-PINCH SAFETY DEVICE

The sun roof has an anti-pinch safety system capable of detecting the presence of an obstacle whilst the roof is closing; when this happens, the system stops and the movement of the front glass is immediately reversed.

# SUN BLINDS

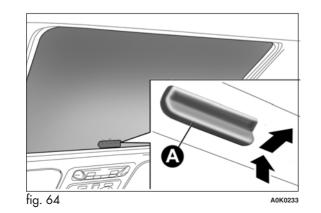
To open the blinds, grip handle A fig. 64, following the direction indicated by the arrow until the desired position is reached. To close it, carry out the procedure in reverse.

# **INITIALISATION PROCEDURE**

After the battery has been disconnected or a fuse has blown, the operation of the sun roof must be initialised again.

Proceed as follows:

 $\square$  press button B fig. 63 until the roof is completely closed. Release the button;

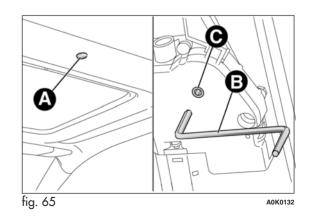


- press B button and keep it pressed for at least 10 seconds and/or until the glass panel clicks forwards. Release the button at this point;
- □ within 5 seconds of the previous operation, press button B and hold it down: the front glass panel will complete a full opening and closing cycle. Only release the button at the end of this cycle.

# MAINTENANCE/EMERGENCY

In the event of emergency or maintenance, the roof can be moved manually when there is no power supply (opening/closing of the front glass panel) by carrying out the following operations:

- □ remove the protective cap A fig. 65 located on the internal lining, between the two sun blinds;
- □ take the Allen key B supplied, which is located in the on-board documentation container or in the tool container in the luggage compartment;
- □ introduce the key into housing C and turn it clockwise to open the roof or anticlockwise to close the roof.



# DOORS

#### DOOR CENTRAL LOCKING/ UNLOCKING

#### Locking from the outside

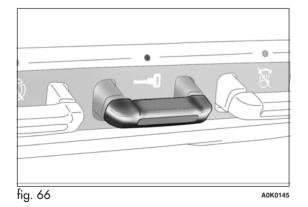
With the doors closed, press the 🔒 button on the key or turn the metal insert (located inside the key) in the driver side door lock.

The LED above the - fig. 66 button switches on to indicate that the doors have been locked.

The door locking function is operated:

 $\Box$  with all the doors closed;

□ with all the doors closed and the luggage compartment open:



### Door unlocking from the outside

Press the D button on the key or turn the metal insert (located inside the key) in the driver side door lock.

#### Door locking/unlocking from the inside

Press the <u>use</u> button. The button has an LED that indicates whether the doors are locked or unlocked.

LED on: doors locked. Press button  $\_\_\_\_$  once again to centrally unlock all doors. The LED will switch off.

LED off: doors unlocked. Press the button again to centrally lock all doors. The doors will be locked only if all the doors are properly shut.

Once the doors have been locked via the remote control or the key pawl, it will no longer be possible to unlock them by pressing button

IMPORTANT With central locking active, pulling the internal opening lever of the passenger side door unlocks the door (the LED stays on). Pulling the internal opening lever of the driver side door activates central unlocking.

IMPORTANT The rear doors cannot be opened from the inside when the child lock device is engaged.

In the absence of electrical power supply (blown fuse, battery disconnected, etc.) it is still possible to lock the doors manually.

SAFETY

**GETTING TO** 

KNOW YOUR CAR

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS



#### CHILD SAFETY DEVICE

This prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Device A fig. 67 can only be engaged with the doors open:

D position 1 - device engaged (door locked);

□ position 2 - device not engaged (door may be opened from the inside).

The device remains on even if the doors are unlocked electrically.

IMPORTANT The rear doors cannot be opened from the inside when the child lock device is engaged.



Always use this device when carrying children.



After engaging the child lock on both rear doors, check for proper engagement by trying to open a rear door with the internal handle.

# EMERGENCY DOOR LOCKING DEVICE

#### Front passenger side door

The front passenger side door has a device to lock it when there is no current

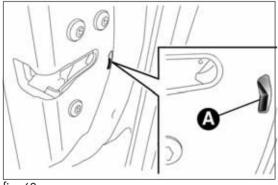
To lock it, fit the metal insert of the ignition key in the housing A fig. 68 and move it upwards.

#### Rear doors

The rear doors are fitted with an emergency device that allows the doors to be locked when there is no current.

In this case proceed as follows:

□ insert the metal insert of the ignition key into housing B fig. 67;  $\Box$  turn the key anticlockwise and then remove it from housing B.



The door lock knob can be realigned (only when the battery charge has been restored) as follows:

 $\Box$  Press the  $\square$  button on the key;

□ press the ...... button on the dashboard to lock/unlock the doors; □ open a front door by inserting the key into the key pawl; □ operate the internal door handle.



If the child lock was engaged and the previously described locking procedure carried out, operating the internal handle will not open the door but will only realign the door lock knobs. To open the door, the outside handle must be used. The door central locking/unlocking button ..... is not disabled by the

engagement of the emergency lock. IMPORTANT If the battery is disconnected or the protection fuse blows, the door opening/closing mechanism must be initialised as follows:

 $\Box$  close all the doors:

- 🗆 press button 🔒 on the key or button 🛶 for locking/unlocking the doors on the instrument panel;
- 🗆 press button 🔒 on the key or button 🛶 for locking/unlocking the doors on the instrument panel.

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

IN AN EMERGENCY

**GETTING TO** 

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

KNOW YOUR CAR

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDFX

#### **GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND

SERVICING AND

MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL

INDEX

**SPECIFICATIONS** 

DRIVING

# **ELECTRIC WINDOWS**

These operate when the ignition key is turned to MAR and for about three minutes after turning the key to STOP or removing it if one of the front doors is open.

The buttons are located in the door panel trim (the driver side door panel can be used to operate all the windows). An anti-pinch device operates when the front and rear windows are raised.

# CONTROLS

# Driver side front door fig. 69

- A Opening/closing front left window; "continuous automatic" operation during window opening/closing stage;
- B Opening/closing front right window; "continuous automatic" operation during window opening/closing stage;
- IN AN EMERGENCY C - Enabling/disabling of rear door electric window controls;
  - D opening/closing rear left window (for versions/markets, where provided); "continuous automatic" operation during window opening/closing stage;
  - □ E Opening/closing rear right window (for versions/markets, where provided); "continuous automatic" operation during window opening/closing stage

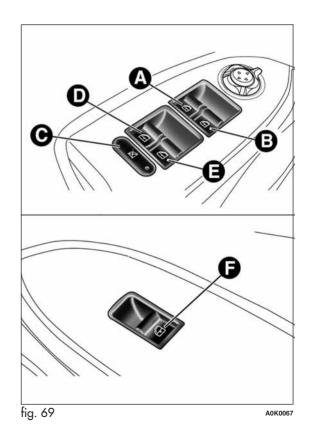
Push the buttons to open/close the desired window.

When one of the two buttons is pressed briefly, the window moves in stages; if the button is held down, "continuous automatic operation" is activated both for closing and opening.

If the control button is pressed again, the window will stop in the desired position. If the button is held down for several seconds, the window raises or lowers automatically (only with ignition key in MAR position).

# Front and rear passenger doors (for versions/markets, where provided)

On the passenger side front door control panel, and on some versions also on the rear doors, buttons F fig. 69 are provided to control the associated windows



#### Anti-crush safety device

The car is equipped with an anti-crush function for the raising of the front and rear windows.

This safety system detects the presence of an obstacle during the window closing travel and intervenes by stopping and reversing the window travel, depending on its position. This device is also useful if the windows are activated accidentally by children on board the car.

The anti-crush safety function is active both during the manual and the automatic operation of the window. When the anti-crush system is activated, the window travel is immediately interrupted and then reversed. The window cannot be operated in any way during this time.

IMPORTANT If the anti-crush protection intervenes 5 consecutive times within a minute or is faulty, the automatic closing operation of the window is inhibited, only allowing it in steps of half a second with the button released for the subsequent manoeuvre.

In order to restore the correct operation of the system, the relevant window must be lowered.

IMPORTANT With ignition key at STOP or removed, the electric windows remain active for about 3 minutes and are deactivated when a door is opened.

IMPORTANT With the anti-crush system, when the D button on the remote control is pressed for longer than 2 seconds the windows will open, whilst if the D button is pressed for longer than 2 seconds the windows will close.



The system conforms to the 2000/4/EC standard concerning the safety of passengers leaning out of the passenger compartment.

dangerous. Before and during operation, always check that no passenger is at risk of being injured directly

Incorrect use of the electric windows may be

by the moving window or by objects getting caught in or dragged by the window. When leaving the car, always remove the key from the ignition to prevent accidental operation of the electric windows from being a hazard for those still on board. GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

# Electric window system initialisation

The system must be re-initialised after disconnecting the battery or if the relevant protection fuse is blown.

Initialisation procedure:

□ fully close the window to initialise with manual operation;

□ after the window has reached the upper end of travel, hold down the closing control for at least 1 second.

For versions/markets where provided, after a break in power supply for the control units (battery replaced or disconnected or protective fuses for the electric window control units replaced), the automatic operation of the windows must be restored. IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS



The restoration procedure must be performed as described below with the doors closed:

- completely open the driver's door window, holding the operating button down for at least three seconds after the (lower) end of travel position;
  - □ completely raise the driver side window and hold the button down for at least 3 seconds once the (upper) end of travel position has been reached;
  - proceed in the same way as described in points 1 and 2 for the passenger side door;
- make sure that the initialisation is correct by checking that the windows work automatically.

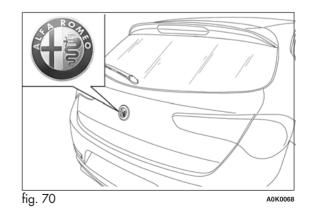
# LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT

The luggage compartment is unlocked electrically and cannot be unlocked when the car is in motion.

# OPENING

When unlocked, the boot can be opened from outside the car by pressing the electric logo fig. 70 until a click is heard which indicates unlocking or by pressing the  $\clubsuit$  button on the remote control.

The direction indicators will flash twice and an internal light will switch on when the luggage compartment is opened: the light switches off automatically when the luggage compartment is closed. The light switches off automatically after a few minutes if the luggage compartment is left open.



### Emergency opening from the inside

Proceed as follows:

 remove the rear head restraints and completely fold back the seats (see the paragraph "Expanding the luggage compartment");
 push lever A fig. 71.

# CLOSING

Lower the tailgate, pressing near the lock until you hear it click into place.

There are handles B fig. 72 inside the tailgate to allow it to be closed more easily.

IMPORTANT Before closing the luggage compartment make sure that you have the keys since the luggage compartment is automatically locked.

#### LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT INITIALISATION

IMPORTANT If the battery is disconnected or the protection fuse blows, the luggage compartment opening/closing mechanism must be initialised as follows:

□ close all the doors and the luggage compartment;

 $\Box$  Press the  $\bigcirc$  button on the remote control;

 $\Box$  Press the  $\Box$  button on the remote control.

# EXTENDING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT

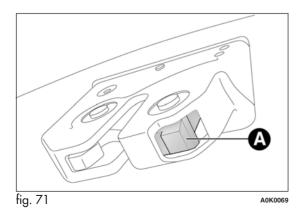
The luggage compartment can be partially (1/3 or 2/3) or totally extended by splitting the rear seat. See the descriptions in "Removing the parcel shelf" and "Folding back the seats" paragraphs for how to expand the luggage compartment.

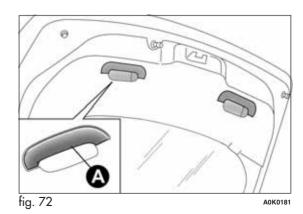


SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING









TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

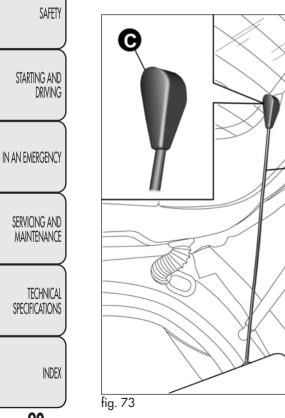
### Removing the parcel shelf

Proceed as follows:

**GETTING TO** 

KNOW YOUR CAR

□ free the ends of the two parcel shelf B mounting links A fig. 73 by removing the eyelets C from the mounting pins;



- □ free the pins A fig. 74 outside the shelf then remove the parcel shelf B sliding it outwards.
- after removal, the parcel shelf can be loaded sideways into the luggage compartment or placed between the front seat backrests and the folded-back rear seat cushions (with the luggage compartment completely expanded).

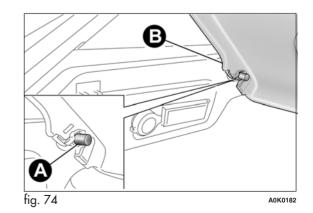
# Folding the seats

Proceed as follows:

B

A0K0070

- raise the headrests to the maximum height, press both buttons A and B fig. 75 to the side of the two supports, then remove the head restraints by sliding them upwards;
- □ move the seat belts to the side, making sure that they are correctly extended and not twisted;
- raise lever A fig. 76 to fold the left or right side of the backrest and then guide the backrest onto the cushion (when lever A is raised, you will see a red band B).



#### Repositioning the rear seat

Move the seat belts to the side making sure that they are correctly extended and not twisted.

Raise the previously folded backrest until you hear the click of the locking mechanism, visually checking that the red band on lever A fig. 76 has disappeared. The red band indicates that the backrest is not secured.

Finally, reposition the head restraints, inserting them into their housings.



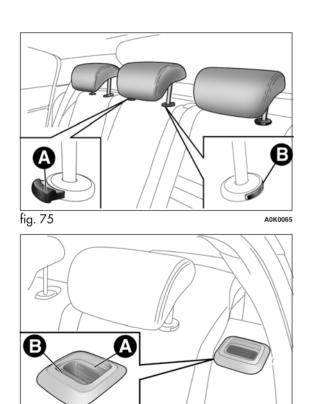
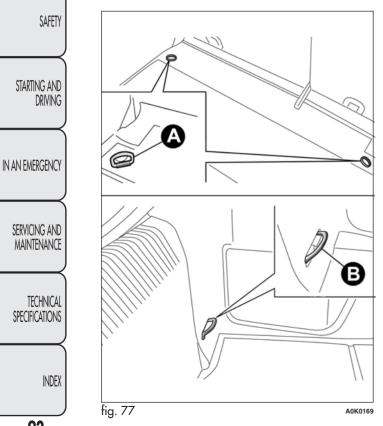


fig. 76

A0K0110

#### **SECURING YOUR LOAD**

The luggage compartment contains two attachments A fig. 77 for the cables that secure the load transported and another two attachments are located on the rear crossmember B.



IMPORTANT Every attachment has a maximum load capacity of 100 kg.



A heavy load that has not been secured may cause serious injuries in the event of an accident.

If you are travelling in an area with limited opportunities for refuelling and you wish to bring petrol with you in a petrol can, you must do so in compliance with current regulations and using an approved can, appropriately secured to the load securing attachments. However, by doing so, you still increase the risk of fire in the event of an accident.

# **BAG HOOKS**

There are also bag hooks inside the luggage compartment.

# LUGGAGE RETAINING NET

(for versions/markets, where provided)

This is useful for correctly arranging the load and/or for transporting light materials. The luggage retaining net is available from Lineaccessori Alfa Romeo.

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

# BONNET

# **OPENING**

Proceed as follows:

- □ pull lever A fig. 78 in the direction indicated by the arrow;
- □ operate lever B, in the direction indicated by the arrow, and raise the bonnet

IMPORTANT Two side gas shock absorbers are provided to assist in opening the bonnet. Do not tamper with the shock absorber and accompany the bonnet while lifting it.

IMPORTANT Before lifting up the bonnet make sure that the windscreen wipers are in the rest position and not operational.

# CLOSING

Lower the bonnet to approximately 20 centimetres from the engine compartment and let it drop. Make sure that the bonnet is completely closed and not only fastened by the safety catch by trying to open it. If it is not perfectly closed, open the bonnet and repeat the procedure. Do not simply press it.

IMPORTANT Always check that the bonnet is closed correctly to avoid it opening while the car is travelling.

The following plate is applied inside the engine compartment fig. 79:



For safety reasons, the bonnet must always be properly closed while driving. Make sure that the bonnet is perfectly closed and that the lock is engaged. If you discover during travel that the lock is not fully engaged, stop immediately and close the bonnet in the correct manner.

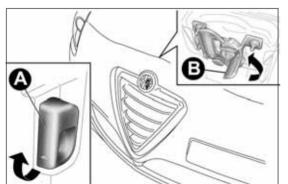


fig. 78

A0K0116



Perform these operations only when the car is stationary.

 $\triangleq$  The bonnet, the bumper and the headlamps of this vehicle have been developed as integral part of the passive safety systems of your car to ensure an optimum protection to pedestrians and to all passengers. For this, in case of replacement, be sure to choose genuine parts of the bodywork which are specifically developed for your car.

fig. 79

A0K1520

INDEX

**GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND

DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

#### GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

# ROOF RACK/SKI RACK

The attachments A fig. 80 are located in the areas illustrated in the figure and can only be accessed with the doors open. Lineaccessori Alfa Romeo includes a dedicated roof rack/ski rack for

Lineaccessori Alta Romeo includes a dedicated root rack/ski rack tor this car.



After travelling for a short distance, check that the fixing screws for the attachments are correctly tightened.



# Never exceed the maximum permitted loads (see chapter "Technical specifications").



IN AN EMERGENCY

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS fig. 80 Аккит



Evenly distribute the load and take into account, when driving, the increased effect of side wind on the car.



Fully comply with the regulations in force concerning maximum clearance.

# HEADLIGHTS

### LIGHT BEAM DIRECTION

The correct orientation of the headlights is important for the driver's comfort and safety as well as for all other road users. This is also covered by a specific rule of the highway code.

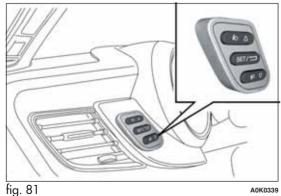
The headlights must be correctly aligned to ensure the best visibility conditions for yourself and others when driving with lights on. To check and, if necessary, adjust, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

### HEADLIGHT ALIGNMENT CORRECTOR

This device works with the ignition key in the MAR position and the dipped headlights on.

#### Headlight alignment adjustment

To adjust, press the ≛⊃ and ≅⊃ fig. 81 buttons. The adjustment position is shown on the display.



**Position 0** one or two people in the front seats.

**Position 1** 4 people.

**Position 2** 4 people + load in luggage compartment.

Position 3 driver + maximum permitted load stowed in the luggage compartment.

IMPORTANT Check the alignment every time that the load carried changes.

IMPORTANT If the car is equipped with Bixenon headlights, the headlight alignment is controlled electronically, as a consequence the Product and Product buttons are not present.

#### FOG LIGHT ALIGNMENT

(for versions/markets, where provided)

To check and, if necessary, adjust, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

#### **ADJUSTING THE HEADLIGHTS ABROAD**

The dipped headlights are aligned to comply with the regulations of the country of purchase. When travelling in countries with opposite driving direction, to avoid dazzling the drivers on the other side of the road, you need to cover areas of the headlight according to the Highway code of the country you are travelling in.

SAFETY

**GETTING TO** 

KNOW YOUR CAR

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDFX

# **GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR SAFETY STARTING AND DRIVING IN AN EMERGENCY SERVICING AND

MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

# **ABS SYSTEM**

The car is fitted with an ABS braking system, which prevents the wheels from locking when braking, makes the most of road grip and gives the best control when performing emergency braking under difficult road conditions

The EBD system (Electronic Braking Force Distribution) completes the system allowing the brake force to be distributed between the front and rear wheels

IMPORTANT To obtain the maximum efficiency of the braking system, a bedding-in period of about 500 km is needed: during this period it is better to avoid sharp, repeated and prolonged braking.

# SYSTEM INTERVENTION

It can be detected because the brake pedal pulsates slightly and the system gets noisier: it means that the car speed should be altered to suit the type of road surface.



If the ABS system intervenes, this indicates that the traction of the tyres on the road is nearing its limit. Slow down to a speed compatible with the available

The ABS gets the most from the available grip, but it cannot improve it; you should therefore take every care when driving on slippery surfaces and not take unnecessary risks.

When the ABS cuts in and you feel the brake pedal pulsating, do not remove your foot, but keep the pedal pushed down; in doing so you, will stop in the shortest distance possible under the road conditions at the time.

# ESC (Electronic Stability Control) SYSTEM

This is an electronic system controlling car stability in the event of tyre grip loss, helping to maintain directional control.

The system is capable of recognising potentially dangerous situations in terms of the stability and intervenes automatically on the brakes in a differentiated manner for the four wheels in order to provide a stabilising torque.

The ESC system also includes the following systems:

□ Hill Holder

 $\Box$  ASR

Brake Assist

 $\Box$  MSR

```
□ "ELECTRONIC Q2" ("E-Q2")
```

🗆 DST

🗆 RAB

# SYSTEM ACTIVATION

The ESC system switches on automatically when the engine is started and cannot be switched off.

# SYSTEM INTERVENTION

It is signalled by the flashing of the **ESC** warning light on the instrument panel, to inform the driver that the car is in critical stability and grip conditions.

# HILL HOLDER SYSTEM

This system is an integral part of the ESC system and facilitates starting on slopes.

It is automatically activated in the following conditions:

- uphill: vehicle stationary on a road with a gradient higher than 5%, engine running, brake pedal pressed and gearbox in neutral or gear (other than reverse) engaged;
- downhill: vehicle stationary on a road with a gradient higher than 5%, engine running, brake pedal pressed and reverse gear engaged.

When setting off the ESC system control unit maintains the braking pressure at the wheels until the engine torque required for departure is reached or for approximately 2 seconds, allowing your right foot to be moved easily from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

If the vehicle has not departed after this time, the system will deactivate automatically by gradually releasing the brake force. A sound may be heard during this stage: this indicates that the vehicle is about to move off.

IMPORTANT The Hill Holder system is not a handbrake. Do not leave the vehicle without having engaged the handbrake, switched off the engine and engaged a gear. GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

# **GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

# ASR (AntiSlip Regulation) SYSTEM

It is an integral part of the ESC system. It automatically operates in the event of one or both drive wheels slipping, loss of grip on wet roads (aquaplaning) and acceleration on slippery, snowy or icy roads, etc. Depending on the slipping conditions, two different control systems are activated.

- if the slipping involves both drive wheels, the ASR intervenes reducing the power transmitted by the engine;
- □ if the slipping only involves one of the drive wheels, the ASR intervenes automatically braking the wheel that is slipping.



For the correct operation of the ESC and ASR systems, the tyres must be the same make and type on all wheels, in perfect condition and, above all, of the type, make and size recommended.



IN AN EMERGENCY

The ESC system operates even when the space-saver wheel is being used. Always remember that the space-saver wheel, being smaller than the original wheel, provides less grip.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

Do not take unnecessary risks, even if your vehicle is fitted with the ESC and ASR systems. Driving style must always be adapted to road conditions, visibility and traffic. The driver is always responsible for road safety.

#### BRAKE ASSIST (assistance during emergency braking)

The system, which cannot be turned off, recognises emergency braking (on the basis of the brake pedal operating speed) and speeding up the response of the braking system. The Brake Assist device is deactivated if there is a ESC system failure.

#### **MSR SYSTEM** (Motor Schleppmoment Regelung)

This system is an integral part of the ABS, that intervenes, if there is a sudden downshifting, restoring torque to the engine, thereby preventing excessive drive at the drive wheels which, especially in poor grip conditions, could lead to a loss in stability of the car.

#### **CBC (Cornering Brake Control)** SYSTEM

This function improves the distribution of the braking pressure at the four wheels (to fully exploit the grip available on the ground) when braking on bends if the ABS intervenes. This improves stopping distances and above all vehicle stability when cornering.

# "ELECTRONIC Q2" SYSTEM ("E-Q2")

The "Electronic Q2" system uses the braking system to create an effect similar to a limited slip differential.

The front braking system, when accelerating around a curve, acts on the inside wheel to increase the drive to the outside wheel (increased load), dynamically and continuously distributing the torque between the front drive wheels according to driving and road conditions.

The system, combined with MacPherson front suspension, allows particularly effective and sports driving to be achieved.

#### DST SYSTEM (Dynamic Steering Torque)

This function integrates Dual Pinion active steering into the operation of ESC. For particular manoeuvres, the ESC system controls the steering to actuate a steering torque and assist the driver in the best possible way.

The system operates the brakes and steering in a coordinated manner to increase the suspension and safety level of the car as a whole. The steering provides additional torque on the steering wheel.

#### RAB SYSTEM (Ready Alert Brakes) (only with "Dynamic" mode engaged)

It is a function that achieves a pre-positioning of the brake pads (front and rear) following a rapid release of the accelerator pedal to reduce braking times, shortening stopping distances.

# "Alfa DNA" SYSTEM (Car dynamic control system)

This device allows, using lever A fig. 82 (on the central tunnel), three car response modes to be selected according to driving style and road conditions:

- □ d = Dynamic (sports driving mode);
- □ n = Natural (mode for driving in normal conditions);
- □ a = All Weather (mode for driving in poor grip conditions, such as rain and snow).

The device also acts on the dynamic car control systems (engine, steering, VDC system, instrument panel).

When lever A fig. 82 is moved to "d" position, the activation of "Dynamic" mode is confirmed by a temporary variation in the brightness (flashing) of the instrument panel.



SAFETY

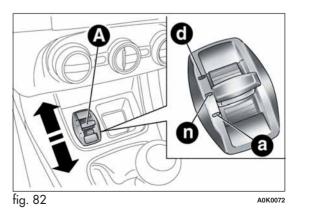
STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND

MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS





#### **DRIVING MODES**

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

DRIVING

Lever A is monostable type. In other words, it always remains in a central position.

The selected driving mode is indicated by the corresponding LED coming on in the panel and by an indication on the reconfigurable multifunction display, as illustrated below:

 Dynamic mode fig. 83 (display image available for versions/ markets, where provided)

□ All Weather Mode fig. 84

# "Natural" mode

When "Natural" mode is selected, no messages or symbols are shown on the display.

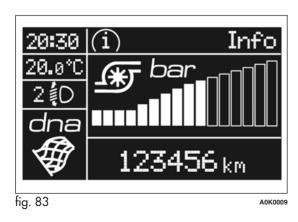
**ESC e ASR:** intervention thresholds aimed at comfort in normal conditions of use for normal driving conditions.

**Steering wheel tuning:** functions aimed at comfort in normal conditions of use.

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX



**DST:** braking standard control coordinated with ABS/ESC. Standard control over lateral acceleration. Oversteer compensation: a slight pulse on the steering wheel encourages the driver to carry out the most appropriate manoeuvre.

Engine: standard response.

#### ENGAGEMENT/DISENGAGEMENT OF "Dynamic" MODE

### Engagement

Move the lever A fig. 82 upwards (next to the letter "d") and hold in this position for 0.5 seconds until the corresponding LED lights up or the word "Dynamic" appears on the display (see fig. 85).

Upon release, lever A returns to the central position.

**ESC and ASR:**intervention thresholds that allow more enjoyable, sportier driving whilst guaranteeing stability in the event of loss of control of the car. Improves traction whilst accelerating on bends. **Steering wheel tuning:** uses the sports mode function.



**DST:** braking standard control coordinated with ABS/ESC. Standard control over lateral acceleration. Oversteering compensation depending on the ESC/ASR intervention thresholds: a slight movement on the steering wheel encourages the driver to carry out the most appropriate manoeuvre.

Engine: prompter response + Overboost to maximise torque (for versions/markets, where provided).

Electronic Q2: improves traction and reduces understeer in acceleration while exiting curves.

**RAB:** by pre-positioning of the brake pads (front and rear) following a rapid release of the accelerator pedal to reduce braking times, shorten stopping distances and improve the brake pedal feeling.

The activation of the Dynamic mode is also shown by the change in the instrument panel lighting that, after decreasing, reaches the highest luminosity and then returns to the previously set values.

#### Disenaaaement

To deactivate "Dynamic" mode and return to "Natural", repeat the same movement of the lever within the same times. In this case, the LED corresponding to "Natural" mode will light up and the words "Natural on" will appear on the reconfigurable multifunction display (see fig. 86).

#### **ENGAGEMENT/DISENGAGEMENT OF** "All Weather" MODE

# Engagement

Move lever A fig. 82 downwards (to the letter "a") and hold in this position for 0.5 seconds until the corresponding LED lights up or the word "All Weather" appears on the display (see fig. 87).

**ESC and ASR**: intervention thresholds for top safety and car control even in the event of critical road conditions (e.g. in case of rain, snow, etc.).

Steering wheel tuning: maximum comfort.

**GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

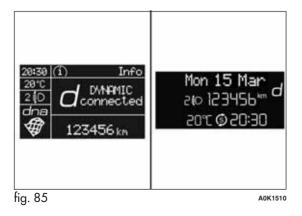
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL

INDFX

SPECIFICATIONS

Info Natural





101



**DST:** higher braking control coordinated with ABS/ESC. Standard control over lateral acceleration. Oversteering compensation depending on the ESC/ASR intervention thresholds: a slight movement on the steering wheel encourages the driver to carry out the most appropriate manoeuvre.

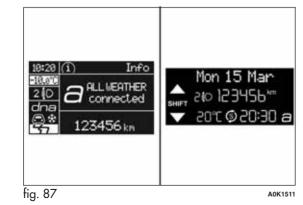
Engine: standard response.

#### Disengagement

To deactivate "All Weather" mode and return to "Natural", carry out the same procedure described for "Dynamic" mode, but move lever A fig. 82 to "a".

#### IMPORTANT

- □ It is not possible to switch directly from "Dynamic" mode to "All Weather" mode and vice versa. You must always first go back to "Natural" mode and then select the other mode.
- □ If "All Weather" or "Natural "mode was active when the engine was stopped, the next time it is started the mode that was selected is reactivated.
- □ In the event of system failure or a fault with lever A fig. 82, no driving modes can be selected. The display will show a warning message.



# START&STOP SYSTEM

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The Start&Stop system automatically stops the engine each time the car is stationary and starts it again when the driver wants to move off. In this way, the efficiency of the car is increased, by reducing consumption, emissions of harmful gases and noise pollution.

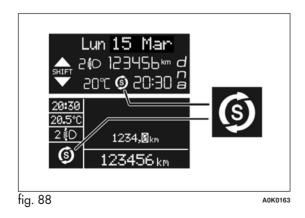
# **OPERATING MODES**

# Engine stopping mode

With the car stopped, the engine stops with gearbox in neutral and clutch pedal released.

Note The engine can only be stopped automatically over about 10 km/h, to prevent the engine from being repeatedly stopped when driving at walking pace.

The S fig. 88 symbol appears on the display when the engine stops.



# Restarting the engine

Press the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

#### SYSTEM MANUAL ACTIVATION/ DEACTIVATION

To activate/deactivate the system manually, press the  $\mathfrak{G}$  fig. 89 button on the dashboard control trim.

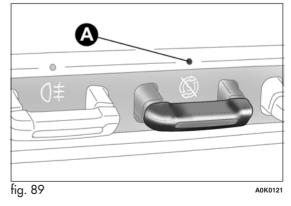
# Start&Stop system activation

Start&Stop system activation is signalled by a message on the display. In this condition, the LED A fig. 89 on the 🕱 button is off.

# Turning the Start&Stop off

- Versions with reconfigurable multifunction display: a message appears on the display when the Start&Stop system is deactivated.
- Versions with reconfigurable multifunction display: the Symbol and a message appear on the display when the Start&Stop system is deactivated.

The LED A fig. 89 is on when the system is deactivated.



GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

#### GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND

MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

DRIVING

# ENGINE STOPPING FAILURE CONDITIONS

When the system is operating, due to comfort, emission control and safety reasons, the engine does not stop in some conditions, among which:

□ engine still cold;

□ especially cold outside temperature;

□ battery not sufficiently charged;

□ particulate filter regeneration (DPF) in progress (diesel engines only);

driver's door not shut;

□ driver's seat belt not fastened;

□ reverse gear engaged (for example, for parking manoeuvres);

for versions equipped with dual zone automatic climate control (for versions/markets, where provided), if an adequate level of thermal comfort has not been reached or with MAX-DEF function activation;
 during the first period of use, to initialise the system.

If the climate comfort is to be favoured, the Start&Stop system can be deactivated, for a continuous operation of the climate control system.

# ENGINE RESTARTING CONDITIONS

Due to comfort, emission control and safety reasons, the engine can restart automatically without any action by the driver, under special conditions, such as:

- □ battery not sufficiently charged;
- reduced braking system vacuum (e.g. if the brake pedal is pressed repeatedly);

 $\square$  car moving (e.g. when driving on roads with a gradient);

 $\square$  engine stopping by Start&Stop system for over 3 minutes;

□ for versions equipped with dual zone automatic climate control system (for versions/markets, where provided), if an adequate level of thermal comfort has not been reached or MAX-DEF function activation.

With gear engaged, automatic engine restarting is possible only by fully depressing the clutch pedal. The driver is informed by the displaying of a message on the display and - for versions/markets, where provided - by the flashing of the symbol ③.

### Notes

If the clutch is not pressed, about 3 minutes after the engine stops, the engine can be restarted only using the ignition key.

In cases when the engine stops and this is not desired, due for example to the clutch pedal being released sharply with a gear engaged, if the Start&Stop system is activated, the engine can be restarted by fully depressing the clutch pedal or by placing the gear lever in neutral.

## **SAFETY FUNCTIONS**

When the engine is stopped by the Start&Stop system, if the driver releases his/her seat belt and opens the driver's or passenger's door, the engine can be restarted only using the ignition key.

The driver is informed by a buzzer and by the flashing of the symbol (5) on the display; on some versions, a message is displayed as well.

### **"ENERGY SAVING" FUNCTION**

(for versions/markets, where provided)

If, following automatic engine restarting, the driver does not carry out any action on the car for over 3 minutes, the Start&Stop system stops the engine once and for all, to prevent fuel consumption. In these cases, the engine can be restarted only using the ignition key.

NOTE In any case, it is possible to keep the engine running by deactivating the Start&Stop system.

# **IRREGULAR OPERATION**

In the event of malfunction, the Start&Stop system is deactivated.

The driver is informed of the fault by the flashing S symbol (versions with multifunction display) or O symbol (versions with reconfigurable multifunction display). For versions/markets where provided, a message is also displayed.

In this case, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

# CAR INACTIVITY

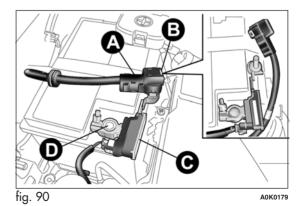
In the event of car inactivity (or if the battery is replaced), special attention must be paid to the disconnection of the battery power supply.

Proceed as follows: detach the connector A fig. 90 (by pressing button B) from sensor C for monitoring the status of the battery installed on the negative battery pole D. This sensor should never be disconnected from the pole except if the battery is replaced.



In case of battery replacement, always contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services. Replace the battery with one of the same type (HEAVY DUTY) and with the same specifications.

IMPORTANT After turning the ignition key to STOP, wait at least 1 minute before disconnecting the electrical supply to the battery.



#### **GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDFX	

105

#### JUMP STARTING

**GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICA SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

When jump starting, never connect the negative lead (-) of the auxiliary battery to the negative pole A fig. 91 of the car battery, but rather to an engine/gearbox earth point.



Before opening the bonnet, make sure the engine is off and the ignition key is in the STOP position. Follow the instructions on the label on the front crossmember (fig. 92). It is advisable to extract the key when there are other people in the vehicle. Exit from the car only after having removed the ignition key or having rotated it to the STOP position. During refuelling, make sure that the engine is off and that the ignition key is in the STOP position.

# **EOBD\_SYSTEM (European On** Board Diagnosis) (for versions/markets, where provided)

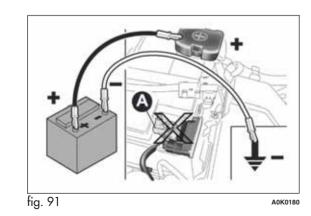
The aim of the EOBD system (European On Board Diagnosis) is to: □ monitor the system efficiency;

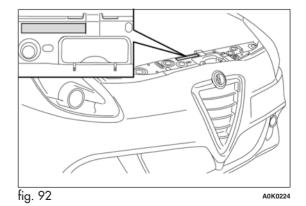
□ indicate an increase in emissions:

🗆 indicate the need to replace damaged components.

The car also has a diagnostic connector that can be interfaced with appropriate tools, which makes it possible to read the error codes stored in the electronic control units together with a series of specific parameters for engine operation and diagnosis. This check can also be carried out by the traffic police.

IMPORTANT After eliminating a fault, to check the system completely, Alfa Romeo Authorised Services are obliged to run tests and, if necessary, road tests which may also call for a long journey.





106

# **DUAL PINION ACTIVE STEERING**

This only operates with the key turned to MAR and the engine started. The steering allows the force required at the steering wheel to be adjusted to suit driving conditions. The different power assistance modes can be selected via the d,n,a positions of the "Alfa DNA System" lever (see paragraph entitled "Alfa DNA System").

IMPORTANT After the battery is disconnected, the steering must be initialised. The warning light switches on to indicate this. To carry out this procedure, simply turn the steering wheel all the way from one end to the other or drive in a straight line for about a hundred metres.



It is absolutely forbidden to carry out any after-market operation involving steering system or steering column modifications (e.g.: installation of anti-theft device) that could badly affect performance and safety, invalidate the warranty and also result in non-compliance of the car with type-approval requirements.

# WIRING FOR RADIO SYSTEM

(for versions/markets, where provided)

If no car radio was requested at the time of purchase, the car is provided with a compartment fig. 93 on the dashboard.

The radio setup system is composed of:

□ car radio power supply cables, front and rear speakers and an aerial:

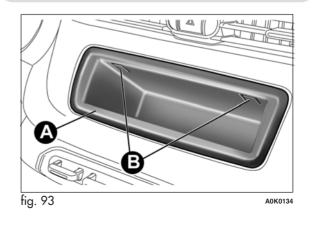
□ radio housing;

□ aerial on car roof.

The car radio must be fitted in the special compartment A fig. 93, which can be accessed by pressing the two retaining tabs B in the compartment itself; power supply cables are located in this area.



When connecting a car radio to the radio wiring contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to prevent any faults from occurring that might compromise the safety of the car.



**GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS



SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

# PREPARATION TO INSTALL A PORTABLE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

(for versions/markets, where provided)

On cars equipped with the **Blue&Me™** system, there may be (on request) the setup for installing the **Blue&Me™** TomTom<sup>®</sup> portable navigation system, which is available from Lineaccessori Alta Romeo.

Install the portable navigation system by fitting the relevant supporting bracket in the housing shown in fig. 94.

#### INSTALLING ELECTRICAL/ ELECTRONIC DEVICES

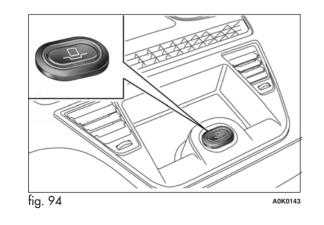
Electrical and electronic devices installed after buying the car in the context of after-sales service must carry the following label: fig. 95

Fiat Group Automobiles S.p.A. authorises the installation of transceiver devices on condition that such installations are carried out in a workmanlike fashion, following the manufacturer's instructions, at a specialised centre.

IMPORTANT Traffic police may not allow the car on the road if devices have been installed which modify the features of the car. This may also cause invalidation of warranty in relation to faults caused by the change either directly or indirectly related to it.

Fiat Group Automobiles S.p.A. shall not be liable for damage caused by the installation of accessories either not supplied or recommended by Fiat Group Automobiles S.p.A. and/or not installed in compliance with the provided instructions.

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS





# RADIO TRANSMITTERS AND MOBILE PHONES

Radio transmitter equipment (vehicle mobile phones, CB radios, amateur radio, etc.) cannot be used inside the car unless a separate aerial is mounted externally.

IMPORTANT The use of similar devices inside the passenger compartment (without separate aerial) produces radio-frequency electromagnetic fields which, amplified by the resonance effects inside the passenger compartment, may cause electrical systems equipping the car to malfunction. This could compromise safety in addition to constituting a potential hazard for the passengers.

In addition, transmission and reception of these devices may be affected by the shielding effect of the car body.

As far as the use of EC-approved mobile phones is concerned (GSM, GPRS, UMTS), follow the usage instructions provided by the mobile phone manufacturer.

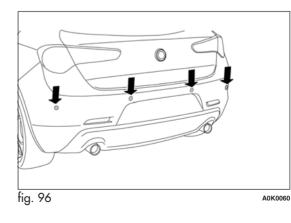
# PARKING SENSORS

(for versions/markets, where provided)

The parking sensors are located in the car's rear bumper fig. 96 and their function is to inform the driver, through an intermittent acoustic signal, about the presence of obstacles behind the car.

## ACTIVATION

The sensors are activated by engaging reverse gear. As the obstacle behind the vehicle gets closer to the car, the acoustic signal becomes more frequent.





SAFETY



SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

# INDICATIONS ON DISPLAY

(for versions/markets, where provided)

KNOW YOUR CAR When the sensor is activated, the "Reconfigurable multifunction display" (for versions/markets, where provided) shows the screen illustrated in fig. 97.

Obstacle presence and distance information is therefore provided both by the buzzer and the instrument panel display.

If there are several obstacles the closest one is indicated.

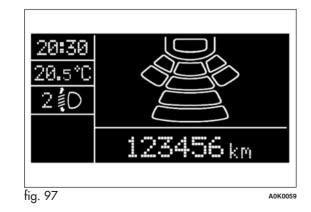
# ACOUSTIC SIGNAL

When reverse gear is engaged an acoustic signal is automatically activated if there is an obstacle within the range of operation.

The acoustic signal:

- □ increases as the distance between the car and the obstacle decreases;
- □ becomes continuous when the distance between the car and the obstacle is less than 30 cm and stops immediately if the distance increases;
- remains constant if the distance remains unchanged; if this situation concerns the side sensors, the buzzer will stop after about 3 seconds to avoid, for example, warning indications in the event of manoeuvres along walls.

IMPORTANT The volume of the acoustic signal can be adjusted through the option "Warning volume" of the "Set-Up menu".



**GETTING TO** 

SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICA

INDEX

SPECIFICATIONS

DRIVING

## **OPERATION WITH TRAILER**

Parking sensor operation is deactivated automatically when the trailer electric cable plug is fitted into the car tow hook socket. The sensors are automatically enabled again when the trailer's cable plug is removed



The sensor must be free of mud, dirt, snow or ice in order for the sensor must be ree of must, and, and, show or ice in order for the system to work. Be careful not to scratch or damage the sensors while cleaning them. Avoid using dry, rough or hard cloths. The sensors should be washed using clean water with the addition of car shampoo if necessary. When using special washing equipment such as high pressure jets or steam cleaning, clean the sensors very quickly keeping the jet more than 10 cm away.



When repainting the bumpers or touching up paint in the sensor area, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services only. Incorrect paint application could affect the operation of the parking sensors.

Parking manoeuvres however are always the driver's responsibility. When carrying out such manoeuvres, always ensure that the manoeuvring area is free of people (particularly children) and animals. The parking sensor is designed to assist drivers, who must still never allow their attention to lapse during potentially dangerous manoeuvres even if performed at low speed.

## GENERAL WARNINGS

During parking manoeuvres, pay the utmost attention to any obstacles that could be located above or below the sensors.

Objects located near the rear of the car are not detected under certain circumstances and could therefore cause damage to the car or be damaged.

The following conditions may influence the performance of the parking sensor system:

- reduced sensor sensitivity and a reduction in the parking assistance system performance could be due to the presence on the surface of the sensor of: ice, snow, mud, thick paint
- □ the sensors may detect a non-existent obstacle (echo interference) due to mechanical interference, for example when washing the car, in rain (strong wind), hail;
- The signals sent by the sensors can also be altered by the presence of ultrasonic systems (e.g. pneumatic brake systems or pneumatic drills) near the vehicle.
- □ sensor performance can also be influenced by the position of the sensors. For example by a change in the ride setting (caused by the wear of the shock absorbers, suspension), overloading the vehicle and carrying out specific tuning operations that require the vehicle to be lowered:
- The detection of obstacles at the top part of the car may not be guaranteed because the system detects obstacles that could cause an impact with the car in the bottom part.

**GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

**GETTING TO** 

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND

MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

DRIVING

KNOW YOUR CAR

lower than 95. In order to prevent damage to the catalytic converter never introduce even the smallest amount of leaded petrol, even in the SAFETY event of an emergency.

Stop the engine before refuelling.

PETROL ENGINES

**REFUELLING THE CAR** 

#### **DIESEL ENGINES**

Use only diesel fuel compliant with European specification EN590. The use of other products or mixtures may damage the engine beyond repair and consequently invalidate the warranty, due to the damage caused.

Only use unleaded petrol. The petrol octane rating (RON) must not be

#### **Operation at low temperatures**

If the outside temperature is very low, the diesel thickens due to the formation of paraffin clots with consequent defective operation of the fuel supply system.

In order to avoid these problems, different types of diesel fuel are distributed according to the season: summer type, winter type and arctic type (cold/mountain areas). If refuelling with diesel fuel whose features are not suitable for the temperature of use, it is advisable to mix TUTELA DIESEL ART additive with the fuel, in the proportions shown on the container. Pour the additive into the tank before the fuel.

When using or parking the vehicle for a long time in the mountains or cold areas, it is advisable to refuel using locally available fuel. In this case, it is also advisable to keep the tank over 50% full.

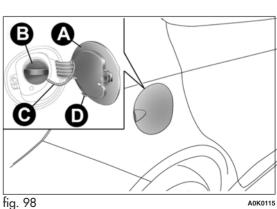
# **FUEL TANK CAP**

The fuel flap is unlocked when the central locking system is released and automatically locked when the central locking system is applied.

## Opening

Press flap A fig. 98 to release it and access the fuel tank cap B. Then press cap B and turn it anticlockwise.

The plug is provided with a loss prevention device C which secures it to the flap, so it cannot be lost. Attach the cap to device D during refuelling.



### **Emergency flap opening**

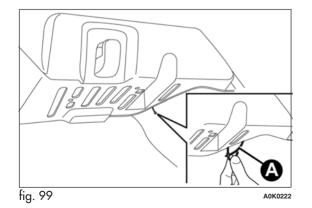
In case of emergency, pull the cord A fig. 99 on the right-hand side of the boot to open the fuel flap.

Pulling the cord will unlock the flap: it will then be necessary to press on the flap to open it.

#### Closure

Release the cap B fig. 98 from the device D and insert it in its housing. Then tighten the cap clockwise until one or more clicks are heard. Finally, close the flap A checking that it is correctly locked.

The sealing may cause a slight pressure increase in the tank. A little breathing off, while slackening the cap is absolutely normal.





Do not place naked flames or lit cigarettes near to the fuel filler: fire risk. Also, keep your face away from this fuel inlet to avoid inhaling harmful fumes.

**GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR SAFETY STARTING AND DRIVING IN AN EMERGENCY SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS INDEX 113

# **GETTING TO** KNOW YOUR CAR SAFETY STARTING AND DRIVING IN AN EMERGENCY SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

# **PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT**

The following devices are used for reducing petrol fuel engine emissions: catalytic converter, oxygen sensors and evaporation control system

The following devices are used for reducing diesel fuel engine emissions: oxidising catalytic converter, exhaust gas recirculation system (EGR) and particulate filter (DPF).

# **DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF)** (for versions/markets, where provided)

This is a mechanical filter, fitted in the exhaust system, which almost completely eliminates carbon particle emissions.



The catalytic converter and particulate filter (DPF) reach very high temperatures during operation. Therefore do not park the car on flammable materials (grass, dry leaves, pine needles etc.): fire hazard.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

# SAFETY

# **SEAT BELTS**

### **USING THE SEAT BELTS**

Wear the belt keeping the torso straight and rested against the backrest. To fasten the belts, hold the tongue A fig. 100 and insert it into the buckle B, until you hear it click into place.

On removal, if the belt jams, let it rewind for a short stretch, then pull it out again without jerking.

To release the belt, press button C. Guide the belt while it is rewinding to prevent it from twisting.



Never press button C fig. 100 when travelling.

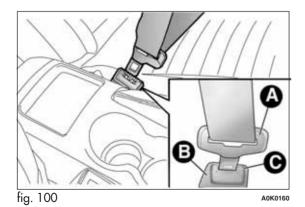
The rear seat is fitted with inertia seat belts with three anchor points and a reel. Fasten the rear seat belts as shown in fig. 101.

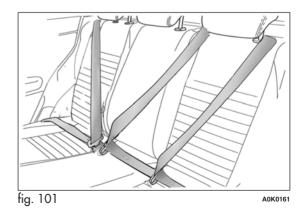


Remember that in the event of an accident, the rear seat passengers not wearing seat belts are exposed to a very serious risk and also represent a serious danger for the front seat occupants.

IMPORTANT The backrest is correctly secured when the red band B fig. 102 on backrest folding handle A disappears. This red band indicates that the backrest is not secured.

IMPORTANT When putting the rear seat back in its normal position, make sure that the seat belts are positioned so that they are ready to use.





**GETTING TO KNOW** YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

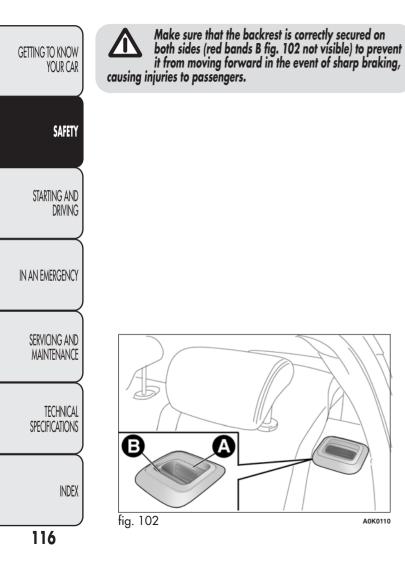
IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS



115



## SBR SYSTEM (Seat Belt Reminder)

This system comprises an acoustic signal which, in conjunction with the warning light flashing on the instrument panel display, warns the driver and front passenger if their seat belts have not been fastened.

On some versions there is also a panel (provided as an alternative to the warning lights on the instrument panel) located above the interior rear view mirror fig. 103, which warns the front and back seat passengers through acoustic and visual signals if their seat belts have not been fastened

Contact Alfa Romeo Authorised Workshops to deactivate the SBR system permanently.

The SBR system can be reactivated at any time through the Setup Menu only (see "Menu Items" in "Knowing your car" section).

The warning lights may be red or green and operate as follows:

 $\Box$  1 = front left seat (driver status for left-hand drive versions);

 $\Box$  2 = rear left seat (passenger);

 $\Box$  3 = rear centre seat (passenger);

 $\Box$  4 = rear right seat (passenger);

A0K0110

 $\Box$  5 = front right seat (passenger status for left-hand drive versions).

#### Front seats (warning light no. 1 = driver and no. 5 = passenger)

#### Driver

If the driver is the only occupant and their seat belt is not fastened, when 20 km/h is exceeded or when travelling at a speed between 10 and 20 km/h for longer than 5 seconds, an acoustic signal cycle will be started for the front seats (continuous acoustic signal for 6 seconds followed by a 90 second beep). The warning light will flash.

The warning lights will stay on constantly at the end of the cycle until the engine is stopped. The acoustic signal will be interrupted immediately when the driver's seat belt is fastened and the warning light will turn green.

The reminder cycle (acoustic and visual) will be repeated as described above and the red warning light will flash if the seat belt is unfastened again while travelling.

#### Passenger

A similar situation applies to the front passenger, with the difference that the warning light turns green and the indication is also interrupted when the passenger leaves the car.

If both front seat belts are unfastened a few seconds apart while the car is travelling, the acoustic signal will refer to the most recent event and the two warning lights will proceed with the visual indication independently.

SAFETY STARTING AND DRIVING IN AN EMERGENCY

**GETTING TO KNOW** 

YOUR CAR

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

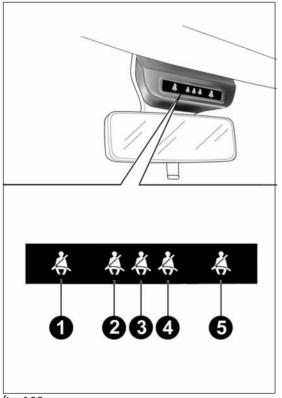


fig. 103

# **GETTING TO KNOW** YOUR CAR SAFETY STARTING AND DRIVING IN AN EMERGENCY SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS INDEX

# Rear seats (warning light no. 2, no. 3 and no. 4)

For the rear seats, the reminder cycle is only activated when any seat belt is unfastened (flashing red).

In this condition, the warning light for the seat belt which has been unfastened will flash (red) for approximately 30 seconds. An acoustic signal is also emitted.

The visual indication (flashing red) will start and stop independently for each warning light if several seat belts are unfastened. The warning light will become green when the relevant seat belt is fastened again.

The rear seat warning lights will switch off, regardless of the state of the belt (red or green) approximately 30 seconds after the last signal.

## IMPORTANT

The warning lights are all off if all seat belts (front and rear) are already fastened when the ignition key is turned to MAR.

All warning lights switch on when at least one belt changes from fastened to unfastened or vice versa.

# PRETENSIONERS

The car is equipped with front seat belt pretensioners, which draw back the seat belts by several centimetres in the event of a violent frontal impact. This guarantees the perfect adherence of the seat belts to the occupants' bodies before the restraining action begins.

It is evident that the pretensioners have been activated when the belt withdraws towards the reel.

The car is also equipped with a second pretensioner (in the kick plate area). Its activation is signalled by the shortening of the metal cable.

A slight discharge of smoke may be produced during the activation of the pretensioner. This is not harmful and does not indicate the start of a fire.

IMPORTANT To obtain the highest degree of protection from the action of the pretensioner, wear the seat belt tight to the chest and pelvis.

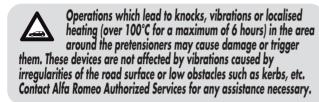
The pretensioner does not require any maintenance or lubrication: any changes to its original conditions will invalidate its efficiency. If, due to exceptional natural events (floods, sea storms, etc.), the device has been affected by water and mud, it must be replaced.

# LOAD LIMITERS

To increase protection, the front seat belt reels contain a load limiter which controls the force acting on the chest and shoulders during the belt restraining action in the event of a head-on collision.



The pretensioner may be used only once. Once it has been activated, contact Alfa Romeo Authorised Workshops to have it replaced. Consult the plate in the glove compartment to check the status of the device. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorised Workshops to have the device replaced as this date approaches.



#### **GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS FOR USING** THE SEAT BELTS

Comply with (and ensure that all the other occupants of the car comply with) the local laws in force regarding the use of seat belts. Always fasten the seat belts before starting off.

Seat belts must also be worn by pregnant women: the risk of injury in the event of an accident is reduced for them and the unborn child if they are wearing a seat belt.

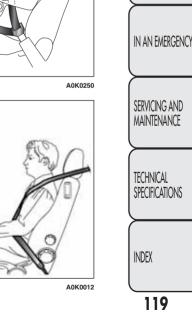
Pregnant women must position the lower part of the belt very low down so that it passes over the pelvis and under the abdomen fig. 104

The belt must not be twisted. The upper part must pass over the shoulder and cross the chest diagonally. The lower part must adhere to the pelvis fig. 105, not to the abdomen of the occupant. Never use devices (clips, clamps, etc.) to hold the seat belt away from your body.

For maximum protection, keep the backrest upright, lean back into it and make sure the seat belt fits closely across your chest and pelvis. Always fasten the seat belts on both the front and the rear seats! Travelling without wearing seat belts will increase the risk of serious injury and even death in the event of an accident.



fig. 105



**GETTING TO KNOW** 

YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

**GETTING TO KNOW** YOUR CAR SAFETY STARTING AND DRIVING IN AN EMERGENCY SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE TECHNICA SPECIFICATIONS INDEX 120

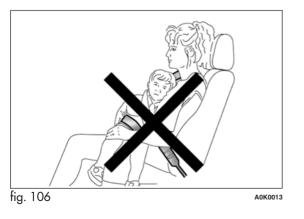
Each seat belt must be used by only one person. Never travel with a child sitting on a passenger's lap and a single belt to protect them both fig. 106. In general, do not place any objects between the person and belt.

Removing or otherwise tampering with safety belt and pretensioner components is strictly prohibited. Any operations on these components must be performed by qualified and authorised technicians. Always contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

If the belt has been subjected to high levels of stress, for example after an accident, it should be changed completely together with the attachments, attachment fixing screws and the pretensioner. In fact, even if the belt has no visible defects, it may have lost its resilience.

#### SEAT BELT MAINTENANCE

- □ Always use the belt with the strap well stretched and never twisted; make sure that it is free to run without obstructions;
- replace the belt after an accident of a certain severity even if it does not appear to be damaged. Always replace the belt if the pretensioners were deployed;
- □ hand wash the seat belts with water and neutral soap, rinse and leave to dry in the shade. Do not use strong detergents, bleach, colourants or any other substance which could damage the belt fibres;
- prevent the reels from getting wet: their correct operation is only guaranteed if water does not get inside;
- $\ensuremath{\square}$  replace the seat belt when there is wear or cuts.



# **CARRYING CHILDREN SAFELY**

For optimal protection in the event of a collision, all passengers must be seated and wearing adequate restraint systems. This is even more important for children.

This prescription is compulsory in all EC countries according to Directive 2003/20/EC. Compared with an adult, a child's head is larger and heavier in proportion to his/her body and the child's muscular and bone structures are not fully developed. Therefore, correct restraint systems other than adult seat belts are necessary to reduce as much as possible the risk of injuries in case of accident, braking or sudden manoeuvre.

Children must be suitably restrained inside the vehicle according to their weight. Several children restraint system types are available; always choose the one most suitable for the child.

Over 1.50 m in height, from the point of view of restraint systems, children are considered as adults and wear the seat belts normally.

The results of research on the best child restraint systems are contained in the European Standard ECE-R44, which enforces the use of restraint systems classified into five weight groups:

Group	Weight groups	
Group 0	up to 10 kg	
Group 0+	up to 13 kg	
Group 1	9-18 kg	
Group 2	15-25 kg	
Group 3	22-36 kg	

All restraint devices must bear the type-approval data along with the control mark on a label firmly secured to the child seat which must never be removed

Lineaccessori Alfa Romeo includes child seats for each weight group. These devices are recommended having been specifically tested for Alfa Romeo cars



When an active passenger airbag is fitted, DO NOT install child seats to be fitted facing backwards on the front seat. Deployment of the airbag in an accident could cause fatal injuries to the baby regardless of the severity of the collision. It is advisable to always carry children in a child seat on the rear seat, which is the most protected position in the ward of a collision. event of a collision.



Should it be absolutely necessary to carry a child on the passenger side front seat in a child seat facing backwards, the passenger side airbags (pelvis/chest protection front and side bags) must be deactivated through the Setup menu. Deactivation should be verified by checking if the 💐 warning light is on the instrument panel. Slide the passenger seat back as far as possible to avoid contact between the child seat and the dashboard.

IN AN EMERGENCY

**GETTING TO KNOW** 

YOUR CAR

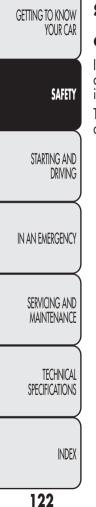
SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDFX



# FITTING "UNIVERSAL" CHILD SEAT (with seat belts)

## GROUP 0 and 0+

Infants up to 13 kg must be carried with a child seat facing backwards of a type as shown in fig. 107 which, supporting the head, does not induce stress on the neck in the event of sudden decelerations.

The child seat is secured by the car seat belts, as shown in fig. 107 and it must restrain the child in turn with its own belts.

# **GROUP** 1

Children of weight from 9 to 18 kg may be carried in child seats facing forwards fig. 108.

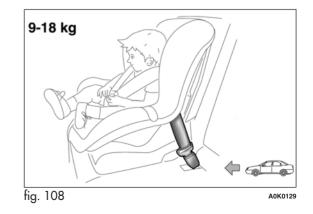


The figures are only examples for fitting purposes. Fit the child seat according to the instructions, which must be included with the seat itself.



Child seats with Isofix attachments are available, which allow them to be secured to the seat safely without using the car seat belts.





## **GROUP 2**

Children from 15 to 25 kg may use the car seat belts directly fig. 109. The child seat is needed only to position the child correctly with respect to the belts, so that the diagonal section crosses the child's chest and never the neck, and the horizontal section is snug on the pelvis, not the abdomen.

# **GROUP** 3

For children from 22 kg up to 36 kg suitable risers are available to position the seat belt correctly.

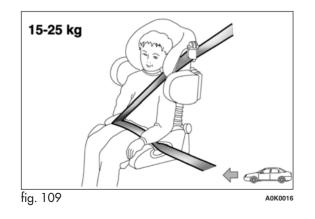
fig. 110 shows an example of correct child seat positioning on the rear seat.

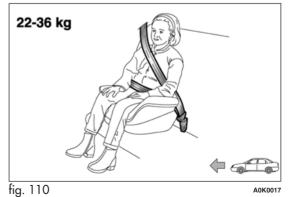


The figures are only examples for fitting purposes. Fit the child seat according to the instructions, which must be included with the seat itself.



**GETTING TO KNOW** 





### SUITABILITY OF PASSENGER SEATS FOR UNIVERSAL CHILD SEAT USE

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR According to the European Directive 2000/3/EC the suitability of each passenger seat position for the fixing of universal child seats is shown in the following table:

Group	Weight groups	Front passenger	Rear side and central passenger
, Group 0, 0+	up to 13 kg	U (*)	U
Group 1	9-18 kg	U (*)	U
Group 2	15-25 kg	U (*)	U
Group 3	22-36 kg	U (*)	U

STARTING AND DRIVING

SAFETY

U (\*)With height-adjustable seat, move the backrest to a vertical position.

U= Suitable for child restraint systems in the "Universal" category, according to European Standard EEC-R44 for the specified "Groups".

IN AN EMERGENCY

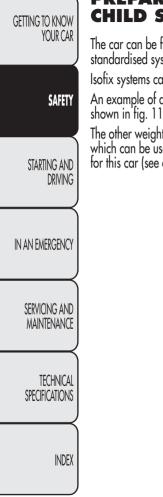


# Main safety rules to be followed when carrying children

- □ Install the child seats on the rear seat, which is the most protected position in the event of an accident;
- □ if the front passenger airbag is deactivated always check the warning light on the instrument panel to make sure that it has actually been deactivated.
- □ Follow the instructions supplied with the child seat itself, which the manufacturer must provide. Keep the instructions in the car along with the other documents and this handbook. Do not use child seats without instructions;
- □ always check that the seat belt is well fastened by pulling on it;
- □ only one child is to be strapped into each retaining system; never carry two children using one child seat;
- □ always check that the belts do not rest on the child's neck;

- □ while travelling, do not let the child sit incorrectly or release the belts;
- never carry children on your lap, even newborns. No-one could restrain them in the event of an accident;
- □ in the event of an accident, replace the child seat with a new one

ld	GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR
ne.	SAFETY
	STARTING AND DRIVING
	IN AN EMERGENCY
	SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE
	TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS
	INDEX
	125



#### PREPARATION FOR "ISOFIX" CHILD SEAT

The car can be fitted with a Universal Isofix child seat, a new European standardised system for carrying children safely.

Isofix systems can be fitted alongside traditional child seats.

An example of a Universal Isofix child seat for weight group 1 is shown in fig. 111.

The other weight groups are covered by the specific Isofix child seat, which can be used only if specifically designed, tested and approved for this car (see car list provided with the child seat). IMPORTANT The central rear seat is not approved for any type of Isofix child seats



#### INSTALLING A UNIVERSAL ISOFIX CHILD SEAT

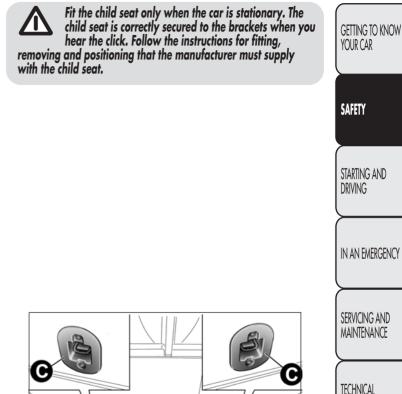
Proceed as follows:

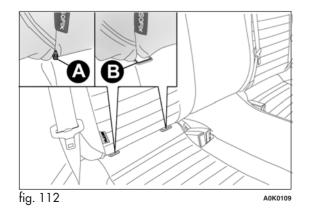
- □ attach the child seat to the special lower metal rings B fig. 112, located inside the rear seat backrest (to access the rings lift hinge A);
- □ secure the upper belt (available together with the seat) to the special attachments C fig. 113 located in the rear part of the backrest.

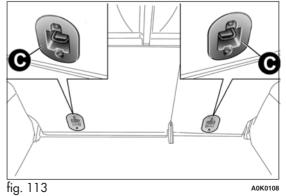
It is possible to have a mixed assembly of traditional seat and Universal Isofix ones. Remember that when using a Universal Isofix child seat, you can only use type-approved child seats with the marking ECE R44 (R44/03 or superior) "Universal Isofix".

The Universal Isofix "Duo Plus" child seat and the special "G 0/1 S" seat are available from Lineaccessori Alfa Romeo.

For further details on child seat installation and/or use, refer to the instruction manual provided with the child seat.







127

SPECIFICATIONS

### SUITABILITY OF PASSENGER SEATS FOR ISOFIX CHILD SEAT USE

The table below shows the various installation possibilities for Isofix child seats on seats fitted with Isofix attachments in accordance with European **GETTING TO KNOW** standard ECE 16. YOUR CAR

	Weight group	Child seat position	Isofix size class	Rear passenger
SAFETY	Group 0 up to 10 kg	Facing backwards	E	IL (*)
		Facing backwards	E	IL (*)
	Group 0+ up to 13 kg	Facing backwards	D	IL (*)
STARTING AND DRIVING		Facing backwards	С	IL (*)
		Facing backwards	D	IL (*)
		Facing backwards	С	IL (*)
IN AN EMERGENCY	Group 1 from 9 up to 18 kg	Forward facing	В	IUF
		Forward facing	BI	IUF
		Forward facing	A	IUF

IL suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems of the categories for "specific vehicles", "restricted" or "semiuniversal" (\*) the Isofix child seat can be installed by adjusting the front seat

IUF: suitable for Isofix child seats to be positioned in forward facing position, universal class (fitted with third upper mounting), type-approved for the relevant weight group.

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

# FRONT AIRBAGS

The car features multistage front airbags ("Smart bags") for driver and passenger.

#### "SMART BAG" SYSTEM (MULTISTAGE FRONT AIRBAGS)

The front (driver and passenger) airbags protect occupants in the event of head-on crashes of medium-high severity, by placing the a cushion between the occupant and the steering wheel or dashboard.

Therefore non-deployment in other types of impacts (side impacts, rear shunts, roll-overs, etc.) does not indicate a system malfunction.

The airbags do not replace, but rather complement, the use of seat belts, which should always be worn. In the event of an impact, someone not wearing a seat belt could move forward and come into contact with a bag which is still in the opening phase. The protection offered by the bag is compromised in these circumstances.

Front airbags may not activate in the following situations:

- □ frontal impacts against highly deformable objects not involving the front surface of the car (e.g. wing collision against guard rail);
- □ jamming of the car underneath other vehicles or protective barriers (e.g. underneath a truck or a guard rail); in this case, the bags would offer no additional protection with respect to the seat belt and their deployment would be inappropriate. In these cases, non-deployment does not indicate a system malfunction.

Do not apply stickers or other objects to the steering wheel, to the passenger's side air bag cover or on the roof side lining. Do not place objects on the passenger side of the dashboard because these could interfere with the

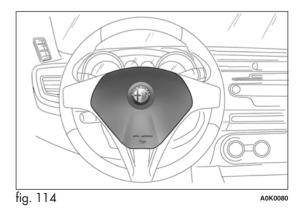
correct opening of the passenger airbag and cause injury to occupants.

#### FRONT DRIVER SIDE AIRBAG

This is located in a dedicated compartment in the centre of the steering wheel fig. 114.



Always drive with your hands on the steering wheel rim so that the airbag can inflate freely if necessary. Do not drive with your body bent forward. Keep the back of your seat upright and lean back into it.



STARTING AND DRIVING

SAFETY

**GETTING TO KNOW** 

YOUR CAR

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

#### GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

#### FRONT PASSENGER AIRBAG

This is located in a dedicated compartment in the dashboard fig. 115.



When the passenger side airbag is activated, child seats facing backwards must NEVER be placed on the front seat. Deployment of the airbag in an accident could cause fatal injuries to the baby regardless of the severity of the collision. Always deactivate the passenger side airbag when placing a child seat on the front seat. The passenger seat must also be positioned back as far as possible in order to avoid the child seat from coming into contact with the dashboard. Though not required by law, we recommend that you reactivate this airbag as soon as the child no longer needs to be transported to ensure better protection for adults.

#### Deactivating passenger side airbags: front airbag and seat-mounted side bag for pelvis, chest and shoulders protection (Side bag)

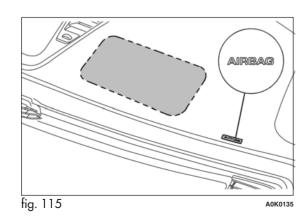
If a child must be carried on the front seat in a child seat facing backwards, deactivate the passenger side front airbag and seatmounted side bag for pelvis, chest and shoulder protection (side back). With the airbags deactivated, the  $\Re_2$  warning light switches on in the instrument panel.



To deactivate the airbags, see the "Knowing your car" section, "Menu Options" paragraph.



IN AN EMERGENCY



## SIDE AIRBAGS (SIDE BAGS - WINDOW BAGS)

The car is equipped with front airbags for driver and passenger pelvis-chest-shoulder protection (side bags) and window bags for protecting the heads of front and rear occupants.

Side bags protect occupants from side on crashes of medium/high severity by placing the bag between the occupant and the internal parts of the side structure of the car.

Non-activation of side bags in other types of collisions (head-on collisions, rear shunts, roll-overs, etc...) is not an indication of system malfunction.

## FRONT SIDE AIRBAGS (SIDE BAGS)

These comprise two types of bags located in the front seat backrests fig. 116 which protect the pelvic, chest and shoulder area of the occupants in the event of a side impact of medium-high severity.

# SIDE AIRBAGS FOR HEAD PROTECTION (WINDOW BAGS)

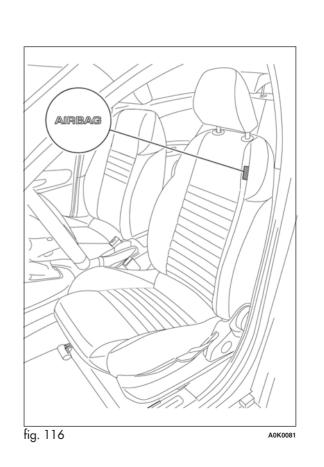
This comprises two "curtain" window bags located behind the side roof cover and are covered by special trim fig. 117. They are designed to protect the head of front and rear passengers in the event of side collisions, thanks to the wide cushion inflation surface.

The airbags are not deployed in the event of low-severity impacts (for which the retaining action of the seat belts is sufficient). It is therefore always necessary to wear seat belts.

In the event of a side impact, the system provides optimum protection if the passenger assumes the correct position on the seat, thus allowing correct window bag deployment.



Do not hook rigid objects to the coat hooks or to the support handles.



SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS INDEX 131

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

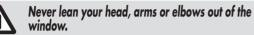
STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

DRIVING



Do not rest your head, arms or elbows on the door, windows or the area in which the window bag is located to avoid possible injury during inflation.



#### IMPORTANT

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

Do not wash the seats with water or pressurised steam (by hand or at automatic seat washing stations).

The front airbags and/or side bags may be deployed if the car is subject to violent impacts involving the underbody area (e.g. violent impacts against steps or kerbs, big holes or dips in the road etc.).

When the airbag deploys it emits a small amount of dust: the dust is harmless and does not indicate the beginning of a fire. The dust may irritate the skin and eyes however: in this case, wash with neutral soap and water.

All operations on airbags (inspection, repair and replacement) must be carried out by Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

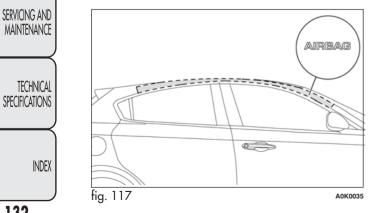
If the car is to be scrapped, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the airbag system deactivated.

Pretensioners and airbags are deployed in different ways, according to the type of impact. Failure to deploy of one of the devices does not necessarily indicate a system malfunction.

If the 💉 warning light does not switch on when the key is turned to MAR, or stays on while driving (on some versions together with a message on the display) there may be a fault in the restraint systems. In this case, airbags or pretensioners may not be activated in the case of an accident or (in a lesser number of cases) they may be activated incorrectly. Before proceeding, confact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the system checked immediately.



The expiry dates of the explosive charge and the clock spring are shown on a specific label contained in the glove compartment. As these dates approach, contact Alfa Romeo Authorised Workshops.



deployed.

Do not travel carrying objects in your lap, in front of your chest or between your lips (pipe, pencils, etc.): they could cause severe injury if the airbag is



If the car has been subject to theft, attempted theft, vandalism, or flooding, have the airbag system inspected at Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.



The airbags may also be deployed when the car is not moving, if the key is in the ignition and turned to MAR even when the engine is off, if the car is hit by another moving vehicle. For this reason, children must never sit on the front seat, even if the car is not moving. Also remember that no safety device (airbags or pretensioners) will activate in the event of impact when the key is at STOP. Non-deployment of these devices under these circumstances does not therefore indicate a system malfunction.

When the ignition key is turned to MAR, the warning light (with passenger side front airbag activated) switches on and flashes for a few seconds to remind you that the passenger airbag will be deployed in a crash, after which it should switch off.

The front airbag is designed to be deployed for impacts of a greater intensity than for the pretensioners. For impacts whose intensity falls

between the two levels, it is normal for only the pretensioners to



SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING



be activated.

The airbag does not replace seat belts but increases their effectiveness. Because front airbags are not deployed for low-speed crashes, side collisions, rear-end shunts or rollovers, occupants are protected, in addition to any side bags, only by their seat belts, which must therefore always be fastened.

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDFX

# **STARTING AND DRIVING**

# **STARTING THE ENGINE**

# **PROCEDURE FOR PETROL VERSIONS**

Proceed as follows:

engage the handbrake and place the gearbox lever in neutral;
 fully depress the clutch pedal, without touching the accelerator;

□ turn the ignition key to AVV and release it as soon as the engine starts.

# IMPORTANT



SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

□ If the engine does not start at the first attempt, return the ignition key to STOP before repeating the starting procedure.

□ If, when the ignition key is at MAR, the instrument panel warning light ⊕ remains on together with warning light ⊕ , turn the key to STOP and then back to MAR; if the warning light remains on, try the other keys provided. If you are still unable to start the engine contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

 $\square$  Never leave the ignition key at MAR when the engine is stopped.

# **PROCEDURE FOR DIESEL VERSIONS**

Proceed as follows:

 $\square$  engage the handbrake and place the gearbox lever in neutral;

□ turn the ignition key to MAR: the warning lights ♂♂ and on the instrument panel will switch on;

 $\square$  wait for the warning lights to switch off;

 □ fully depress the clutch pedal, without touching the accelerator;
 □ turn the ignition key to AVV; oo warning light switches off. Waiting too long will waste the heating work carried out by the glow plugs. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

If the or warning light flashes for about 1 minute after starting or during prolonged cranking, this indicates a fault in the glow plug preheating system. Use the car normally if the engine starts and go to Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible.



It is dangerous to run the engine in enclosed areas. The engine takes in oxygen and releases carbon dioxide, carbon monoxide and other toxic gases.



It is advisable not to demand maximum performance from your car (e.g. excessive acceleration, long distances at maximum rpm, excessively intense braking, etc.) when it is



When the engine is off, do not leave the ignition key turned to MAR to prevent unnecessary electrical consumption from draining the battery.

STARTING AND DRIVING

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY



Remember that the brake servo and electromechanical power steering are not operational until the engine has been started, therefore much more effort than usual is required on the brake pedal and steering wheel.



Never start the engine by pushing, towing or driving downhill. These manoeuvres may damage the catalytic converter.

#### WARMING UP THE ENGINE JUST AFTER IT HAS STARTED

Proceed as follows:

- □ drive off slowly, letting the engine turn at medium revs and without accelerating abruptly;
- □ do not demand maximum performance for the first few kilometres. It is advisable to wait until the engine coolant temperature indicator starts moving.

## **STOPPING THE ENGINE**

Turn the ignition key to STOP while the engine is idling.

IMPORTANT After a demanding drive, before turning the engine off you should allow it to idle to allow the temperature in the engine compartment to decrease.



A quick burst on the accelerator before stopping the engine serves absolutely no practical purpose. It wastes fuel and is especially damaging to turbocharged engines.

# PARKING

Switch off the engine and pull up the handbrake. Engage a gear (1<sup>st</sup> if the car is facing uphill or reverse if it is facing downhill) and leave the wheels steered to one side.

If the car is parked on a steep slope block the wheels with a wedge or stone. Always remove the ignition key when leaving the car.



Never leave children unattended in the car. Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the car and take it with you.

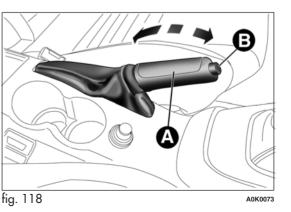
# HANDBRAKE

To engage the handbrake pull lever A fig. 118 upwards until the car is secured. To release the handbrake, raise lever A slightly, hold down button B and lower the lever.



**STARTING AND** 

DRIVING



SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

**GETTING TO KNOW** YOUR CAR

SAFETY



IMPORTANT Carry out these manoeuvres with the brake pedal pressed.

IMPORTANT For cars equipped with a front armrest, lift this up to ensure that it does not interfere with the action of the handbrake.



The car should be locked after a few notches: if this is not the case, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have the handbrake adjusted.

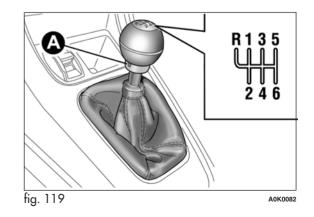
# **USING THE GEARBOX**

To engage the gears, press the clutch pedal fully and put the gear lever into the required position (the diagram is shown on the knob fig. 119).

To engage  $6^{th}$  gear, operate the lever by pressing it towards the right in order to avoid engaging 4th gear by mistake. The same applies to the shift from  $6^{th}$  to  $5^{th}$  gear.

To engage reverse gear (R) from the neutral position, lift up ring A fig. 119 and simultaneously move the lever to the left and then forwards.

IMPORTANT Reverse can only be engaged when the car is completely stationary.





Press the clutch pedal fully to change gears correctly. It is therefore essential that there is nothing under the pedals: make sure the mats are lying flat and do not aet in the way of the pedals.



Do not drive with your hand resting on the gear lever as the force exerted, even if slight, could lead over time to premature wear of the gearbox internal components.

# **SAVING FUEL**

Here are some suggestions which can help you to save fuel and lower harmful emissions.

## **GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS**

#### Car maintenance

Have checks and adjustments carried out in accordance with the "Scheduled Servicing Plan" (see chapter "Maintenance and care").

# **Tyres**

Check the tyre pressure at least once every 4 weeks: if the pressure is too low, consumption levels increase as resistance to rolling is higher.

# **Unnecessary loads**

Do not travel with an overloaded boot. The weight of the car and its arrangement greatly affect fuel consumption and stability.

# Roof rack/ski rack

Remove the roof rack or the ski rack from the roof after use. These accessories lower aerodynamic penetration and adversely affect consumption levels. It is better to use a trailer to transport particularly bulky objects.

# **Electrical devices**

Only use electrical devices for the time needed. The heated rear window, additional headlights, windscreen wipers and heater fan require a considerable amount of energy; increasing the current uptake increases fuel consumption (by up to +25% in an urban cycle). **GETTING TO KNOW** YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

#### GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

#### **Climate control system**

Using the climate control system will increase consumption: use the air vents when the external temperature allows it.

#### Devices for aerodynamic control

The use of non-certified devices for aerodynamic control may adversely affect air drag and fuel consumption.

## DRIVING STYLE

## Starting

Do not warm up the engine at low or high revs when the vehicle is stationary; this causes the engine to warm up more slowly, thereby increasing fuel consumption and emissions. It is therefore advisable to move off immediately, slowly, avoiding high speeds: in this way the engine will warm up more quickly.

#### Unnecessary actions

Avoid revving up when at traffic lights or before switching off the engine. The latter action, like double-declutching, is unnecessary and causes increased fuel consumption and pollution.

#### Gear selection

Use a higher gear when traffic and road conditions allow it. Using a low gear for faster acceleration will increase consumption. In the same way improper use of a high gear increases consumption, emissions and engine wear.

## Maximum speed

Fuel consumption considerably increases as speed increases. Keep your speed as even as possible, avoiding unnecessary braking and acceleration which cause excessive fuel consumption and increased emissions.

#### Acceleration

Accelerating violently severely affects consumption and emissions: acceleration should be gradual and should not exceed the maximum torque.

# **CONDITIONS OF USE**

# **Cold starting**

Short distances and frequent cold start-ups will prevent the engine from reaching optimal running temperature. This results in a significant increase in consumption levels (from +15 to +30% on the urban cycle) and emissions.

# Traffic and road conditions

High fuel consumption is caused by heavy traffic, for instance when travelling in a gueue with frequent use of low gears or in large towns with many traffic lights. Winding mountain roads and rough road surfaces also adversely affect consumption.

# Stops in traffic

During prolonged stops (e.g. level crossings) switch the engine off.

# **TOWING TRAILERS**

#### IMPORTANT

The vehicle must be provided with a type-approved tow hook and adequate electrical system to tow caravans or trailers. Installation must be carried out by a specialist.

Fit any specific and/or additional rear view mirrors as specified by the Highway Code.

Remember that, when towing a trailer, steep hills are harder to climb, braking distances increase and overtaking takes longer relative to the overall weight of the trailer.

Engage a low gear when driving downhill, rather than constantly using the brake.

The weight of the trailer reduces the load capacity of the car by the same amount. Consider the weight at full load, including accessories and luggage, to make sure you do not exceed the maximum towable weight (shown in the registration document).

Respect the speed limits specific to each country for vehicles towing trailers. In any case do not exceed 100 km/h.

#### **INSTALLING A TOW HOOK**

Contact Alfa Romeo Authorised Services to install a tow hook



The ABS with which the car is equipped will not control the braking system of the trailer. Particular caution is therefore required on slippery roads.



Do not, under any circumstances, modify the vehicle braking system to control the trailer breaking system The towing breaking system must be completely independent of the vehicle's hydraulic system.

trol	
is e's	SAFETY
m.	STARTING AND DRIVING
	IN AN EMERGENCY
	SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE
	TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS
	INDEX
	139

**GETTING TO KNOW** 

YOUR CAR

# **SNOW TYRES**

Use snow tyres of the same size as the normal tyres provided with the car: Alfa Romeo Authorized Services will be able to advise you on the most appropriate tyre to use.

Only use these tyres in the event of ice or snow on the roads.

For the type of snow tyre to be used, inflation pressures and the specifications, strictly follow the instructions given in the "Wheels" paragraph in the "Technical specifications" section.

The winter performance of these tyres is considerably reduced when the tread thickness is less than 4 mm. Replace them in this case.

Due to their specific features, the performance of snow tyres is much lower than that of normal types in normal conditions or long motorway stretches. Their usage should therefore be restricted in accordance with their type approval.

All four tyres should be the same (brand and track) to ensure greater safety when driving and braking and good driveability. Remember that it is inadvisable to change the rotation direction of tyres.

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

**GETTING TO KNOW** 

YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

DRIVING

The maximum speed for snow tyres marked "Q" is 160 km/h, while it is 190 km/h for "T" tyres and 210 km/h for "H" tyres. The highway code speed limits must however always be complied with.

# SNOW CHAINS

The use of snow chains should be in compliance with local regulations. The snow chains may be applied only onto the front wheel tyres (drive wheels)

Check the tension of the snow chains after the first few metres have been driven

Use low-clearance snow chains: on all versions, for 195/55 R16", 205/55 R16" and 225/45 R17" size tyres use low-clearance snow chains with a maximum protrusion beyond the tyre profile of 9 mm.

IMPORTANT The space-saver wheel cannot be fitted with snow chains. If a front (drive) wheel is punctured and snow chains must be used, you must remove a normal wheel from the rear and replace this one with the space-saver wheel. In this way, with two normal drive wheels, it is possible to use snow chains.



Keep your speed down when snow chains are fitted; do not exceed 50 km/h. Avoid potholes, steps and pavements and avoid driving long distances on roads not covered with snow to avoid damaging the car and the roadbed.

## **STORING THE CAR**

If the car is to be left inactive for longer than a month, the following precautions should be noted:

- park the vehicle in a dry, covered and, if possible, ventilated area; engage a gear and check that the handbrake is not engaged;
- □ disconnect the negative battery terminal and check the battery charge. Repeat this check once every three months during storage;
- □ if you have not disconnected the battery, check the battery charge every thirty days;
- $\hfill\square$  clean and protect the painted parts using protective wax;
- clean and protect the shiny metal parts using special compounds available commercially;

- □ sprinkle talcum powder on the windscreen and rear window wiper rubber blades and lift them off the glass;
- $\Box$  slightly open the windows;
- □ cover the car with a cloth or perforated plastic sheet. Do not use compact plastic sheets which do not allow humidity to evaporate from the surface of the car.
- □ inflate tyres to +0.5 bar above the standard specified pressure and check it at intervals;
- □ do not drain the engine cooling system.

IMPORTANT After turning the ignition key to STOP, wait at least 1 minute before disconnecting the battery power supply.

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR
-----------------------------

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## IN AN EMERGENCY

In an emergency we recommend that you call the freephone number found in the Warranty Booklet. You can also consult www.alfaromeo.com to find your nearest Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

## **STARTING THE ENGINE**

If the main warning light on the instrument panel remains on constantly, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services immediately.

#### JUMP STARTING

If the battery is flat, the engine may be started using an auxiliary battery with the same capacity or a little higher than the flat one. Proceed as follows to start the vehicle:

□ connect the positive terminal (+) fig. 120 of the auxiliary battery only to the point indicated on the car battery (writing OK) and nowhere else:

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

**GETTING TO KNOW** YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND

DRIVING

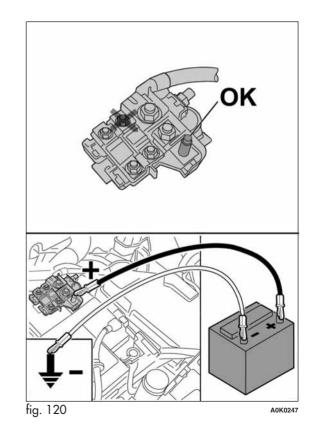
IN AN

EMERGENCY

- $\Box$  with a second cable, connect the negative terminal ( ) of the auxiliary battery to an earthing point  $\clubsuit$  on the engine or the gearbox of the car to be started;
- □ start the engine; afterwards, follow the sequence above in reverse order to remove the cables.

For versions with Start&Stop system, to carry out the jump starting procedure, refer to the paragraph "Start&Stop system" in the "Getting to know your car" section.

Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services if you cannot start the engine after several attempts.



IMPORTANT Never connect the negative terminals of the two batteries directly! If the auxiliary battery is installed on another car, prevent accidental contact between metallic parts of the two cars.



Never use a fast battery-charger to start the engine as this could damage the electronic systems of your car, particularly the ignition and fuel supply control units.



This starting procedure must be performed by expert personnel because incorrect actions could cause electrical discharge of considerable intensity. Furthermore, battery fluid is poisonous and corrosive: avoid contact with skin and eyes. Keep naked flames and lighted cigarettes away from the battery and do not cause sparks.

#### **BUMP STARTING**

Never start the engine by pushing, towing or coasting downhill.

## **REPLACING A WHEEL**

#### **GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS**

The car is equipped with the "Fix&Go Automatic Kit": see the paragraph "Fix&Go Automatic Kit" for how to use this device. As an alternative to the "Fix&Go Automatic Kit" the car may be equipped with a space-saver wheel: see the instructions on the following pages for changing the tyre.

The spare wheel is specific for your car. Do not use it on cars of different models. Do not use spare wheels of different models on your car. The space-saver wheel must only be used in case of emergency. It must only be used for the distance necessary to reach a service point and the car speed must not exceed 80 km/h. The space-saver wheel has an orange sticker that summarises the main cautions for use and limitations. Never remove or cover the label. Never apply any hub cap to the space-saver spare wheel.



Alert other drivers that the car is stationary in compliance with local regulations: hazard warning should leave the car, especially if it is heavily laden. Passengers should stay away from on-coming traffic while the wheel is being changed. In case of steep slopes or rough slopes, place wedges or other materials suitable to stop the vehicle under the wheels.

**GETTING TO KNOW** YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS



The vehicle's driving characteristics will be modified with the space-saver wheel fitted. Avoid violent acceleration and braking, sharp steering and fast cornering. The total life of a space-saver wheel is approximately 3,000 km, after which it must be replaced by another wheel of the same type. Never attempt to fit a conventional tyre on a rim designed for use as a space-saver wheel. Repair and refit the standard wheel as soon as possible. Two or more space-saver wheels should never be used together. Do not grease the threads of bolts before fitting them: they might slip out.

The jack provided is only intended to be used for replacing tyres on the vehicle with which it is supplied, or on same-model vehicles. Never use the jack for other purposes, such as lifting other car models. Never use it for repair operations under the vehicle. Incorrect positioning of the jack may cause the car to fall. Do not use the jack for loads higher than those shown on the label. Never install snow chains on the small spare wheel; if a front tyre (driving wheel) is punctured and you need to use snow chains, use a standard wheel from the rear axle and install the small spare wheel on the rear axle. In this way, with two normal front drive wheels, it is possible to use snow chains.

Incorrectly fitting the hubcap may cause it to fall off when the vehicle is in motion. Never tamper with the inflating valve. Never introduce tools of any kind between rim and tyre. Regularly check the inflation pressure of the tyres and space-saver wheel (see chapter "Technical specifications").

### JACK

Please note that:

 $\square$  the jack weight is 1.76 kg;

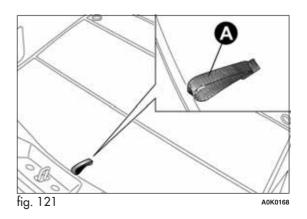
□ the jack requires no adjustment;

□ the jack cannot be repaired and in the event of a fault it must be replaced by another original one;

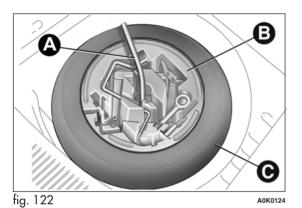
 $\Box$  no tool other than its cranking device may be fitted on the jack.

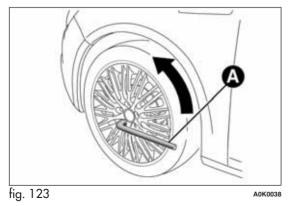
To change a wheel proceed as follows:

- □ stop the car in a position that is not dangerous for oncoming traffic where you can change the wheel safely. The ground must be flat and sufficiently compact;
- □ switch off the engine, pull up the handbrake and engage 1<sup>a</sup> gear or reverse; put on the high visibility jacket (required by law) before leaving the vehicle;
- □ open the luggage compartment, pull tab A fig. 121 and lift up the mat;



- □ using the wrench A fig. 122 positioned in the tool box, loosen the locking device, take the tool box B and place it close to the wheel to be replaced, then take the space/saver wheel C;
- □ take the wrench A fig. 123 and loosen the fixing bolts by about one turn. For versions with alloy rims, shake the car to facilitate detachment of the rim from the wheel hub;





- position the jack under the car, near the wheel to be changed. On versions where this is fitted, be careful not to damage the plastic aerodynamic guard;
- operate the device A fig. 124 so as to extend the jack, until the upper part B fig. 125 is inserted correctly inside the side member C;

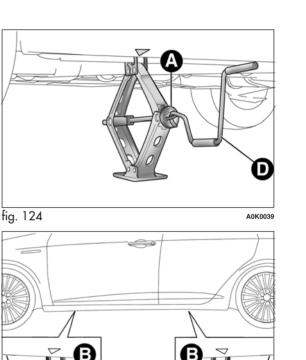


fig. 125

**GETTING TO KNOW** YOUR CAR SAFETY STARTING AND DRIVING IN AN EMERGENCY SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE **TECHNICAL** SPECIFICATIONS INDEX 145

A0K0083

GETTING TO KNOW	alert any bystander that the car is about to be raised; all persons should be kept away from the car and nobody must touch it until it has been lowered;
YOUR CAR	□ fit handle D fig. 124 into the housing in device A, operate the jack and raise the car until the wheel is a few centimetres from the ground;
SAFETY	Ground, for versions with wheel cap, remove the wheel cap after loosening the 4 fastening bolts and finally loosen the fifth bolt and extract the wheel;
STARTING AND	make sure the contact surfaces between space-saver wheel and hub are clean so that the fastening bolts will not come loose;
DRIVING	fit the space-saver spare wheel by inserting the first bolt for two threads into the hole closest to the valve;
	□ take the wrench A fig. 123 and fully tighten the fixing bolts;
IN AN Emergency	operate the jack handle D fig. 124 to lower the vehicle. Then extract the jack;
	use the wrench A fig. 123 provided to fully tighten the bolts in a criss-cross fashion as per the numerical sequence illustrated in
SERVICING AND	fig. 126;
MAINTENANCE	when replacing an alloy wheel it is advisable to place it upside down, with the aesthetic part facing upwards.
TECHNICAL	Visit Alfa Romeo Authorized Services as soon as possible to
SPECIFICATIONS	check the correct tightening of the main wheel bolts.
	Restore the standard wheel as soon as possible, because, once placed
INDEX	in the associated compartment, the luggage compartment load platform is rendered uneven as the standard wheel is larger than the space-saver wheel.

#### **REMOVING THE SUBWOOFER** (versions with Bose HI-FI system)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

IMPORTANT The following procedure only applies to cars equipped with Bose HI-FI systems with subwoofer (for versions/markets, where provided).

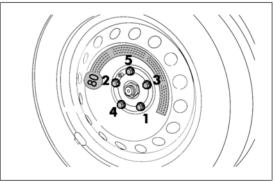
#### Subwoofer and space-saver spare wheel

On these versions, the tools needed for changing the wheel are arranged in a specific container on the left-hand side of the boot (see fig. 127).

The jack is located in a pocket, again on the left-hand side of the boot (see fig. 128).

Proceed as follows to remove the Subwoofer:

- □ open the boot, pull the tab A fig. 121, lift the mat upwards and remove the load compartment shim fig. 127;
- □ loosen the fastening device A fig. 129, remove the clip B fastening the cable and then lift the subwoofer;



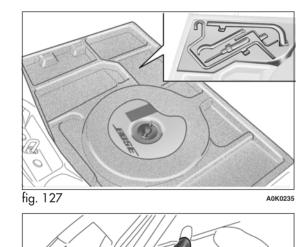


A0K0040

□ rest the subwoofer on the side of the boot and take the space-saver spare wheel;

□ replace the wheel as described previously.

fig. 128



A0K0228

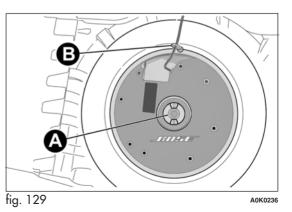
At the end of the operation:

- □ reposition the subwoofer correctly (see indications on the label applied over the subwoofer itself), so that the word "BOSE" is positioned in the right direction for reading;
- □ reposition the subwoofer wire correctly to avoid pinching it. Then fasten the clip B fig. 129 and fasten the blocking device A. Finally, position the load compartment shim fig. 127 correctly and lower the boot mat.



STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN Emergency



SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

#### GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND

DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

#### Subwoofer and "Fix&Go Automatic Kit"

Locating the Automatic Fix&Go Kit:

- open the luggage compartment, pull tab A fig. 121 and lift up the mat;
- □ take the "Fix&Go Automatic Kit" located on the left side of the luggage compartment ( fig. 130);

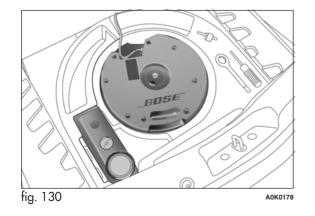
□ inflate the wheel (see paragraph entitled "Fix&Go Automatic Kit").

IMPORTANT If you need to remove the subwoofer follow the indications shown on the adhesive label fig. 130 over the subwoofer itself to reposition it correctly.





INDEX



## **REFITTING THE WHEEL**

Following the procedure described previously, raise the car and remove the small spare wheel.

Proceed as follows:

- $\Box$  make sure the contact surfaces between standard wheel and hub are clean so that the fastening bolts will not come loose;
- □ for versions with steel rims: fix the hub cap on the rim, aligning the crescent hole with the bolt you have fitted, then insert the other 4 bolts;
- $\Box$  tighten the retaining bolts using wrench A fig. 123;
- $\Box$  lower the car and remove the jack;
- □ use wrench A fig. 123 to fully tighten the bolts, following the sequence shown in fig. 126

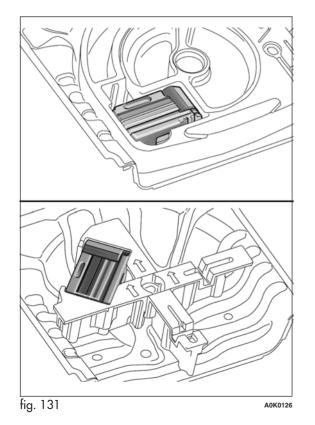
## At the end of operation

- □ stow the space-saver spare wheel in the compartment provided in the boot;
- $\hfill\square$  insert the jack and the other tools in the container;
- $\square$  arrange the container and tools on the space-saver wheel;

 $\square$  correctly reposition the boot mat.

## "Fix&Go Automatic" kit

This is located in the luggage compartment (the kit container may vary according to version - see fig. 131). The kit container also contains a screwdriver and the tow hook.



The kit also contains:

- □ a bottle fig. 132 containing sealer and fitted with: filling tube B and adhesive label C with the wording "max. 80 km/h" to be placed in a clearly visible position (e.g. on the dashboard) after repairing the tyre;
- a compressor D complete with pressure gauge and connectors;
- an information leaflet fig. 133, providing instructions for using the kit correctly. This booklet should be given to the persons charged with handling the tyre treated with this kit;

□ a pair of gloves located in the side compartment of the compressor; □ adapters for inflating different elements.

IMPORTANT The sealing liquid is suitable for use at temperatures in the range from  $-20^{\circ}$ C to  $+50^{\circ}$ C. The sealant has an expiry date.



Give the leaflet to the technicians who will be handling the tyre that was treated using the "Fix&Go Automatic" kit.



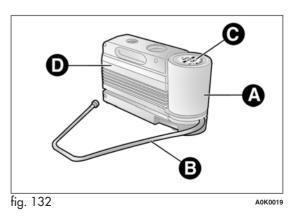
STARTING AND DRIVING

**GETTING TO KNOW** 

YOUR CAR

SAFETY

EMERGENCY



SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

> TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS





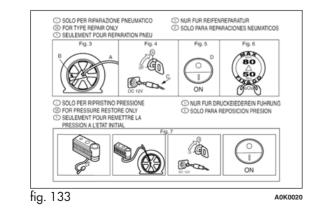
In the event of a puncture caused by foreign bodies, the kit may be used to repair tyres showing damage on the track or shoulder up to max 4 mm diameter. Never operate the compressor for longer than 20 consecutive minutes. Risk of overheating. The kit is not suitable for definitive repairs, so the repaired tyres may only be used temporarily.

 $\Lambda$ 

Holes and damage on the tyre side walls cannot be repaired. Do not use the tyre quick repair kit if the tyre is damaged as a result of driving with it deflated.

Repairs are not possible in the case of damage to the wheel rim (bad groove distortion causing air loss). Do not remove foreign bodies (screws or nails) from

the tyre.



the with

Dispose of the bottle and the sealant liquid properly. Have the sealing fluid and the cylinder disposed of in compliance with national and local regulations.

The bottle contains ethylene glycol and latex: it may cause an allergic reaction. It is harmful if swallowed. It is irritant for the eyes in case of contact. There could be a reaction in the event of inhalation or contact. Avoid contact with the eyes, skin and clothes. In the event of contact, rinse immediately with plenty of water. If ingested, do not induce vomiting. Rinse out your mouth, drink large quantities of water and seek immediate medical attention. Keep out of the reach of children. The product must not be used by asthmatics. Do not inhale the vapours during insertion and suction. Call a doctor immediately if allergic reactions are noted. Store the bottle in the specific compartment, away from sources of heat. The sealant fluid has an expiry date. Replace the bottle containing out-ofdate sealant fluid.

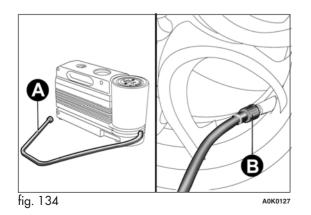
#### **INFLATION PROCEDURE**



Wear the protective gloves provided with the kit.

Proceed as follows:

- engage the handbrake, unscrew the tyre valve cap, take out the flexible filler pipe A fig. 134 and tighten the ring nut B on the tyre valve;
- □ make sure that switch A fig. 135 for the compressor is in position 0 (off), start the engine, insert the plug into the luggage compartment power socket (see fig. 136) or cigar lighter on central tunnel (see fig. 137) and switch on the compressor by bringing switch Afig. 135 to position I (on);
- □ inflate the tyre to the pressure indicated in the "Wheels" paragraph in the "Technical specifications" section. In order to obtain a more precise reading, check the pressure value on pressure gauge B tig. 135 with the compressor off;



□ if after five minutes it is still impossible to reach at least 1.8 bar, disengage the compressor from the valve and power socket, then move the car forwards by approx. ten metres in order to distribute the sealing fluid inside the tyre evenly, then repeat the inflation operation;

fig. 135

fig. 136



A

A0K0021

A0K0152

**GETTING TO KNOW** YOUR CAR SAFETY STARTING AND DRIVING IN AN EMERGENCY SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS INDEX

□ if you still cannot obtain a pressure of at least 1.8 bar within 5 minutes from the compressor switching on, do not drive off and contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services;

- after driving for about 10 minutes, stop and check the tyre pressure again; remember to put the handbrake on;
- □ if a pressure value of at least 1.8 bar is detected, restore the correct pressure (with the engine running and the handbrake engaged), resume driving and drive with great care to Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.



fig. 137

Apply the adhesive label where it can be easily seen by the driver as a reminder that the tyre has been treated with the quick repair kit. Drive carefully, particularly on bends. Do not exceed 80 km/h. Do not accelerate or brake suddenly.

A0K0128



If the pressure has fallen below 1.8 bar, do not drive any further: the Fix&Go Automatic quick tyre repair kit cannot guarantee the correct hold because the tyre is too damaged. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

Inform the dealership that the tyre has been repaired using the quick tyre repair kit. Give the leaflet to the technicians who will be handling the tyre that was repaired using the quick repair kit.



## CHECKING AND RESTORING TYRE PRESSURE

The compressor can also be used to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressure.

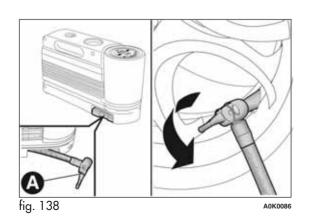
Release quick connector A fig. 138 and connect it directly to the valve of the tyre to be inflated.

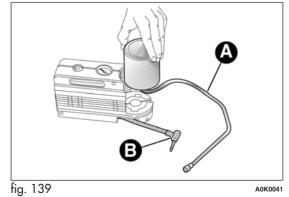
#### **REPLACING THE BOTTLE**

Proceed as follows:

□ release connector A fig. 139 and disconnect tube B;
 □ turn the bottle to be replaced anticlockwise and raise it;
 □ fit the new bottle and turn it clockwise;

□ insert connector A and tube B in their housings.





GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR
SAFETY
STARTING AND DRIVING
IN AN EMERGENCY
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS
INDEX



SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

## **CHANGING A BULB**

## **GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS**

Defore changing a bulb check the contacts for oxidation;

D blown bulbs must be replaced with others of the same type and power;

after replacing a headlight bulb, always check its alignment;

□ when a light is not working, check that the corresponding fuse is intact before changing a bulb. For the location of fuses, refer to the paragraph "Replacing fuses" in this section.



Halogen bulbs must be handled holding the metal part only. Touching the transparent part of the bulb with your fingers may reduce the intensity of the emitted light and even reduce the lifespan of the bulb. In case of accidental contact, wipe the bulb with a cloth moistened with alcohol and let the bulb dry.

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL

INDEX

SPECIFICATIONS

IN AN EMERGENCY

> Modifications or repairs to the electric system that are not carried out properly or do not take the system technical specifications into account can cause malfunctions leading to the risk of fire.



Halogen bulbs contain pressurised gas which may cause small fragments of glass to be projected outwards if the bulb is broken.



Due to the high power supply voltage, gas discharge bulbs (Bi-Xenon) should only be replaced by specialised personnel: danger of death! Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

IMPORTANT When the weather is cold or damp or after heavy rain or washing, the surface of headlights or rear lights, may steam up and/or form drops of condensation on the inside. This is a natural phenomenon due to the difference in temperature and humidity between the inside and the outside of the glass which does not indicate a fault and does not compromise the normal operation of lighting devices. The mist disappears quickly when the lights are turned on, starting from the centre of the diffuser, extending progressively towards the adapt. the edges.

#### TYPES OF BULBS

The car has the following light bulbs:

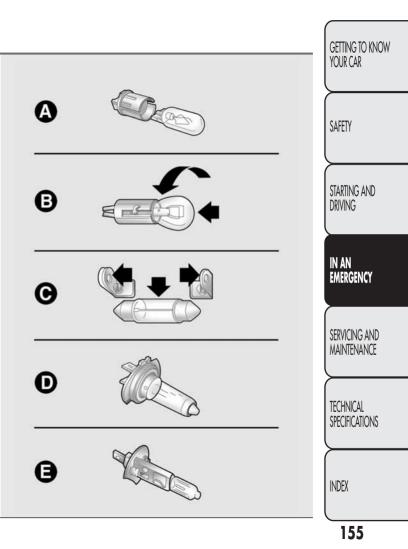
Glass bulbs: (type A) they are press-fitted. Pull to extract.

**Bayonet-type bulbs:** (type B) to remove from its holder, press the bulb and turn it anti-clockwise, then extract it.

Tubular bulbs: (type C) release them from their contacts to remove.

**Halogen bulbs:** (type D) to remove the bulb, release the clip holding the bulb in place.

**Halogen bulbs:** (type E) to remove the bulb, release the clip holding the bulb in place.



	Bulbs	Туре	Power	Re. Figure
GETTING TO KNOW	Front side lights/Daytime running lights (DRL)	LEDs		-
YOUR CAR	Rear side lights	LEDs		
$\longrightarrow$	Dipped headlights	H7	55W	D
SAFETY	Main beam headlamps	H1	55W	E
JAILIT	Main/Dipped beams (versions with Bi-Xenon headlights) (for versions/markets, where provided)	F	DIS	
STARTING AND DRIVING	Front direction indicators	PY24W	24W	В
	Rear direction indicators	R10W	10W	В
	Side direction indicators	LEDs		•
IN AN Emergency	Brake lights	LEDs		
	3rd brake light	LEDs		•
	Number plate light	W5W	5W	А
	Fog lights	H3	55W	E
SERVICING AND	Rear fog lights	H21W	21W	В
MAINTENANCE	Reversing lights	P21W	21W	В
$\longrightarrow$	Front roof light	C10W	10W	С
TECHNICAL	Luggage compartment roof light	W5W	5W	A
SPECIFICATIONS	Glove compartment light	C5W	5W	С

## **REPLACING EXTERIOR BULBS**

#### FRONT LIGHT CLUSTERS

These contain the bulbs for the side lights/daytime running lights (DRL), dipped beams, main beams and direction indicators. The bulbs are arranged as follows fig. 140:

- A Side lights/daytime running lights and main beam headlights
- **B** Dipped headlights
- **C** Direction indicators

#### SIDE LIGHTS/DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS (DRL)

These are LED lights. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to replace these lights.

#### MAIN BEAM HEADLIGHTS

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

□ remove cover A fig. 141;

□ remove the connector A fig. 141 and then open the tabs B outwards; □ remove the bulb C and replace it;

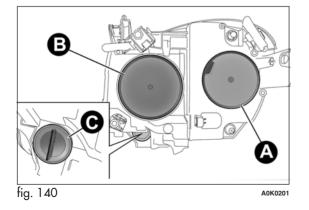
□ refit the new lamp, making sure that it is locked correctly, secure the tabs B again and reconnect the connector A;

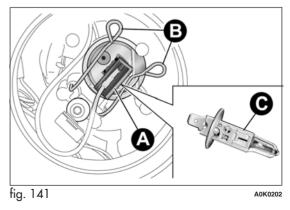
 $\Box$  then refit the cover A fig. 140.



**GETTING TO KNOW** 

YOUR CAR





### DIPPED HEADLIGHTS

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

- □ remove cover B fig. 140;
- □ remove the connector A fig. 142, press the tab B forward and then release by pushing it towards the inside the car;
- □ remove the bulb C and replace it;
- □ refit the new lamp, making sure that it is locked correctly, secure the tab B again and reconnect the connector A;

 $\Box$  then refit the cover B fig. 140.

### **DIRECTION INDICATORS**

#### Front

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

 $\square$  turn the cover C fig. 140 anticlockwise by 1/4 of a turn;

□ replace the bulb + bulb holder assembly A fig. 143.

#### Side

These are LED lights. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to replace these lights.

#### FOG LIGHTS

(for versions/markets, where provided)

For the replacement of these bulbs, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.



**GETTING TO KNOW** 

YOUR CAR

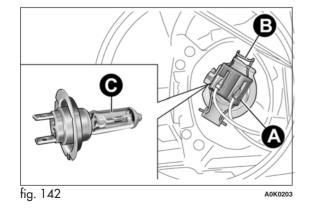
SAFETY

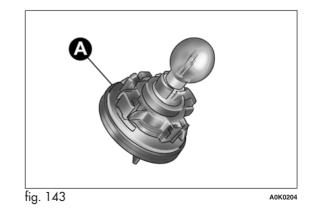
STARTING AND

DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS





### **REAR LIGHT CLUSTERS**

These contain the side lights, brake lights, direction indicators (bulbs in fixed light cluster), reverse light and rear fog light (bulb in light cluster on boot hatch).

#### Removing the fixed light cluster

Proceed as follows:

- $\square$  open the boot and loosen the rear light cluster fastening screw A fig. 144;
- extract the light cluster by removing it with both hands in the direction of the arrow;
- 🗆 disconnect the electrical connector and replace the bulb concerned.

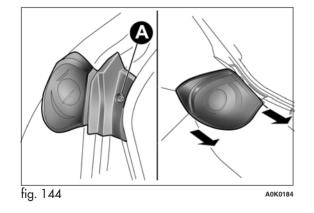
#### SIDE LIGHTS/BRAKE LIGHTS

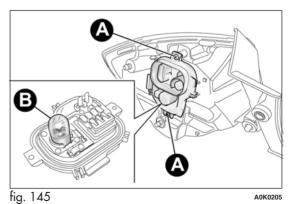
These are LED lights. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to replace these lights.

#### **DIRECTION INDICATORS**

With the light cluster removed, to replace the bulb undo the two screws A fig. 145, remove the bulb holder and replace bulb B.







## GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN Emergency

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

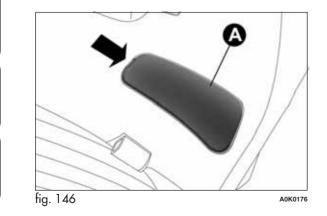
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

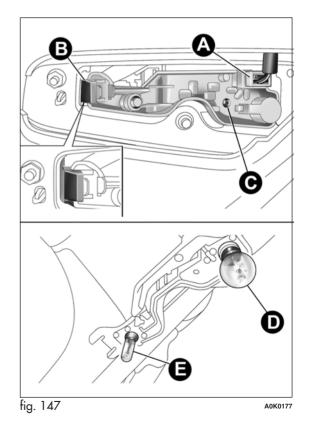
#### **REAR FOG LIGHTS/REVERSING LIGHTS**

To replace the bulbs proceed as follows:

- □ open the boot and remove the cover A fig. 146 using a screwdriver in the point indicated by an arrow;
- □ remove the connector A fig. 147 and extract the bulb holder assembly by operating on the retaining tab B and then by loosening the screw C;
- □ remove the bulb by pushing it slightly and turning it anticlockwise (D = reverse light bulb; E = rear fog light bulb);
- □ refit the bulb holder assembly positioning it correctly, fasten screw C and then fix it by means of the retaining tab B. Reconnect connector A then refit cover A fig. 146.



IMPORTANT Protect the tip of the screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching when removing the cover A.



160

## 3<sup>rd</sup> BRAKE LIGHTS

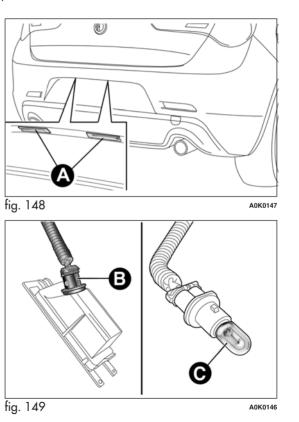
These are LED lights and are located on the spoiler integrated with the tailgate. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to replace these lights.

### NUMBER PLATE LIGHTS

To replace the bulbs proceed as follows:

□ remove the number plate light units fig. 148;

 $\square$  turn the bulb holder B fig. 149 anticlockwise, extract the bulb C and replace it;







SAFETY

STARTING AND

DRIVING

IN AN

EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

## **REPLACING INTERIOR BULBS**

### FRONT ROOF LIGHT

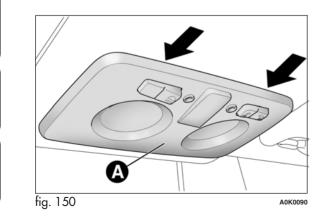
To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

- remove the roof light A fig. 150 working at the points indicated by the arrows;
- open the flap B fig. 151 and replace the bulbs C releasing them from the side contacts. Make sure that the new bulbs are correctly secured between the contacts;
- □ reclose the flap B fig. 151 and fix the roof light A fig. 150 in its housing making sure that it is locked.

## REAR ROOF LIGHT

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

remove the roof light A fig. 152 working at the points indicated by the arrows;



- open the protective flap B fig. 153 and replace the bulb C releasing it from the side contacts. Make sure that the new bulb is correctly secured between the contacts;
- □ reclose the protective flap B fig. 153 and fix the roof light A fig. 152 in its housing making sure that it is locked.

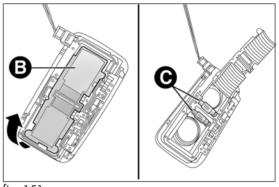
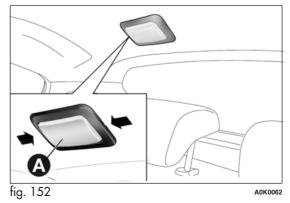


fig. 151

A0K0089



#### LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ROOF LIGHT

To change the bulb, proceed as follows:

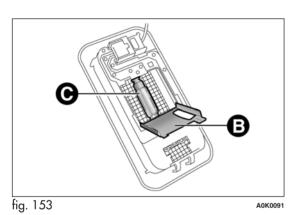
□ open the luggage compartment and extract the roof light A fig. 154 working in the point shown by the arrow;

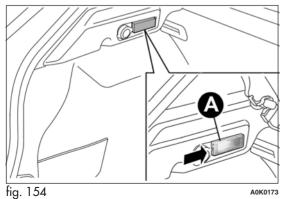
 $\square$  open the protection B fig. 155 and replace the bulb;

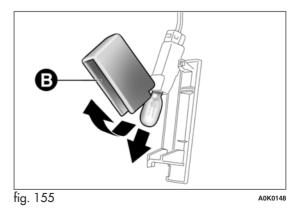
 $\Box$  re-close the protection B on the lens;

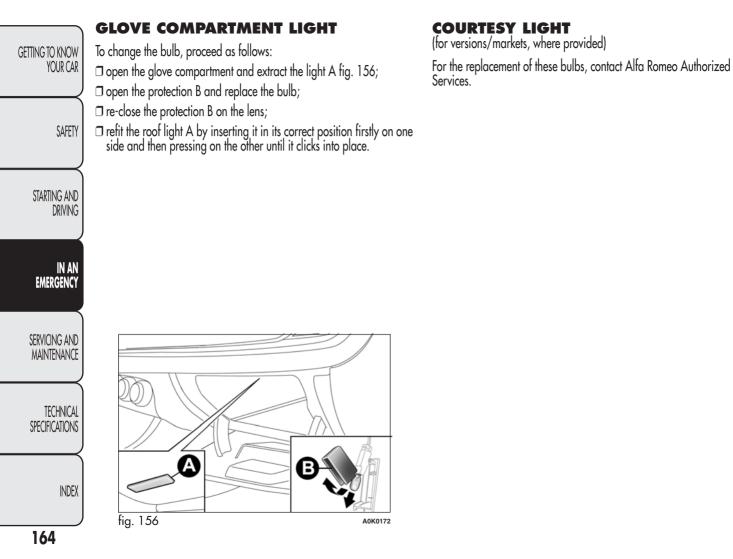
□ refit the roof light A fig. 154 by inserting it in its correct position firstly on one side and then pressing on the other until it clicks into place.











## **REPLACING FUSES**

### **GENERAL INFORMATION**

Fuses protect the electrical system: they intervene (blow) in the event of a failure or improper intervention on the system.

When a device does not work, check the condition of its protective fuse: the conductor element A fig. 157 must be intact.

If it is not, replace the blown fuse with another with the same amperage (same colour).

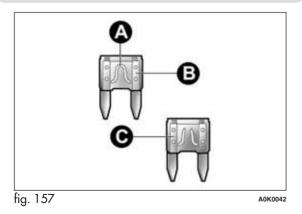
B = undamaged fuse.

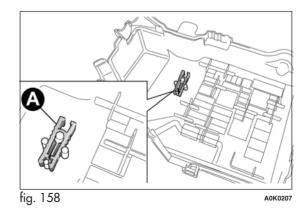
C = fuse with damaged filament.

Use the pliers A fig. 158 under the engine compartment fusebox lid to remove the fuses (see "Engine compartment fusebox" for how to remove the lid).

	Δ
4	

## Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services should the fuse blow again.







Never replace a fuse with metal wires or anything else.

## $\wedge$

Never replace a fuse with another with a higher amp rating; DANGER OF FIRE.

If a general protection fuse (MAXI-FUSE, MEGA-FUSE, MIDI-FUSE) blows, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.



Remove the key from the ignition switch and switch off all loads before replacing a fuse.

IN AN Emergency

STARTING AND

DRIVING

**GETTING TO KNOW** 

YOUR CAR

SAFETY



MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX	



SAFETY

STARTING AND

DRIVING

IN AN Emergency Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services if a safety system (air bags, brakes), engine system (engine, gearbox) or steering system general protection fuse

blows.

#### **FUSE LOCATION**

Fuses are grouped together in three fuse boxes located in the engine compartment, dashboard and luggage compartment.

#### Engine compartment fuse box

This is located next to the battery fig. 160: to access the fuses, undo the screws A fig. 159 and remove cover B.

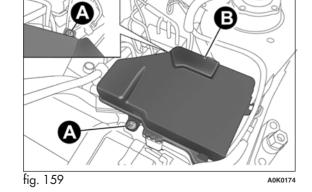
The number identifying the electrical component corresponding to each fuse is on the back of the cover.

After replacing the fuse, make sure you close cover B on the fuse box.

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

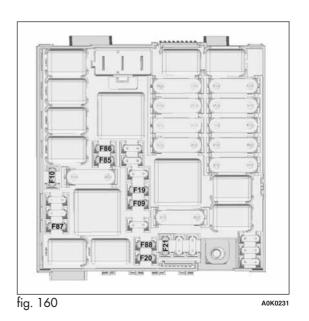
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX





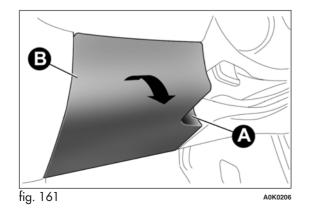
If you have to wash the engine compartment, take care not to aim the jet of water directly at the fuse box or windscreen wiper motors.

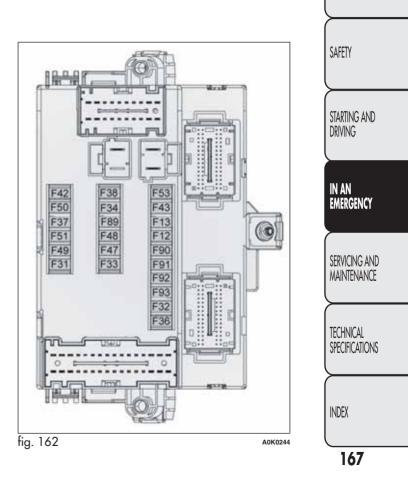


166

#### Dashboard fuse box

Insert a hand in housing A fig. 162 and lower flap B to access the fuses fig. 161.



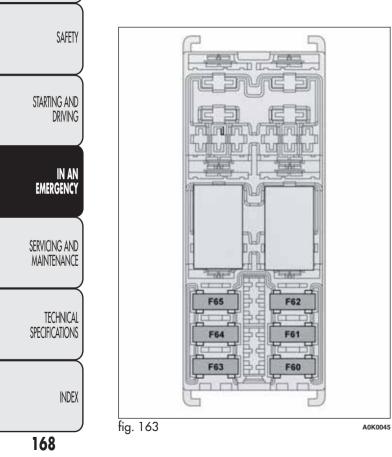


GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

#### Luggage compartment fuse box

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR The fuse box (fig. 163) is located on the left side of the luggage compartment underneath the side cover.

Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to access it.



#### **ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX** fig. 160

DEVICE PROTECTED	FUSE	AMPS	YOUR CAR
Headlamp washer pump power supply	F09	30	
Horn	F10	15	
AC compressor	F19	7,5	SAFETY
Heated rear window	F20	30	
Fuel pump	F21	15	STARTING AND
Fuel pump (1750 Turbo Petrol version)	F21	20	DRIVING
Cigar lighter/power socket	F85	15	
12 V boot power socket	F86	15	
IBS Battery charge status sensor for Start&Stop system	F87	5	IN AN Emergency
External mirror defrosters	F88	7,5	

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

TECHNICAL **SPECIFICATIONS** 

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

GETTING TO KNOW	fig. 162		
YOUR CAR	DEVICE PROTECTED	FUSE	AMPS
$\longrightarrow$	Right main beam headlight	F91	7,5
CALLERY	Left main beam headlight	F90	7,5
SAFETY	Right dipped beam headlight (versions with halogen headlights)	F12	7,5
	Left dipped beam headlight (versions with halogen headlights)	F13	7,5
STARTING AND	Right dipped beam headlight (versions with Bi-Xenon headlights)	F12	15
DRIVING	Left dipped beam headlight (versions with Bi-Xenon headlights)	F13	15
	Right fog light	F93	7,5
INT AN	Left fog light	F92	7,5
IN AN Emergency	Luggage compartment roof light/Sun visor roof light/Glove compartment light/Front and rear roof light/Radio navigator display	F32	10
	Various devices	F31	5
SERVICING AND	Rear electric window (left side)	F33	20
MAINTENANCE	Rear electric window (right side)	F34	20
$\longrightarrow$	+30	F36	10
TECHNICAL	Various devices	F37	7,5
SPECIFICATIONS	Central locking	F38	20
	Body Computer supply	F42	5
	Two-way windscreen washer pump	F43	20
INDEX	Front electric window (driver side)	F47	20

# **INSTRUMENT PANEL FUSE BOX** fig. 162

DEVICE PROTECTED	FUSE	AMPS	
Front electric window (passenger side)	F48	20	GETTING TO KNOW
Various devices	F49	5	- YOUR CAR
Various devices	F50	7.5	¯ <b>}</b>
Various devices	F51	5	SAFETY
+30	F53	7,5	
Radionavigator display supply	F89	5	

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN Emergency

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

touk cak			
	DEVICE PROTECTED	FUSE	AMPS
SAFETY	Lumbar adjustments	F60	15
	Front seat heater	F61	15
	BOSE amplifier + Subwoofer	F62	20
STARTING AND DRIVING	Left front seat movement	F63	15
	Right front seat movement	F64	15
	Electric sun roof	F65	15

IN AN EMERGENCY SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS INDEX

## 172

#### LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT JUNCTION UNIT fig. 163

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

## **BATTERY RECHARGING**

IMPORTANT The battery recharging procedure is given as information only. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to carry out this operation.

IMPORTANT After turning the ignition key to STOP, wait at least 1 minute before disconnecting the battery power supply.

We recommend recharging the battery slowly for approximately 24 hours at low amperage. Charging for a longer time may damage the battery.

#### VERSIONS WITHOUT Start&Stop SYSTEM

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Charge the battery as follows:

- 🗆 disconnect the negative battery terminal;
- □ connect the charger cables to the battery terminals, observing the polarity;
- $\Box$  turn on the battery charger;
- when it is recharged, turn the charger off before disconnecting it from the battery;

🗆 reconnect the negative battery terminal.

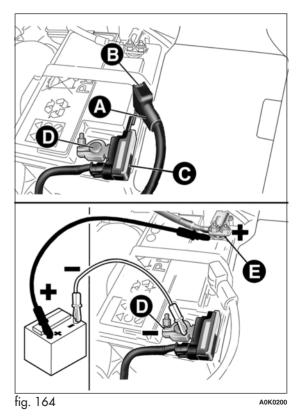
### VERSIONS WITH Start&Stop SYSTEM

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Charge the battery as follows:

□ disconnect the connector A fig. 164 (pressing the button B) from the sensor C monitoring the battery conditions, on the negative pole D of the battery;

connect the positive cable of the battery charger to the positive battery terminal E and the negative cable to sensor terminal D as shown;



YOUR CAR
SAFETY
STARTING AND DRIVING
IN AN EMERGENCY
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS
INDEX
173

**GETTING TO KNOW** 



□ turn on the battery charger. At the end of the charging process, switch the battery charger off;

□ after having disconnected the charging device, reconnect connector A to the sensor C as shown.

## **RAISING THE CAR**

If you need to lift the car contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services, who will be equipped with a workshop lift.

IMPORTANT Be careful when positioning the arm of the lift for versions with side skirts.

## **TOWING THE CAR**

The tow ring provided with the car is housed in the tool box in the boot.

#### **ATTACHING THE TOW HOOK**

Release the plug A by pressing the lower part, take the tow hook B from its housing in the tool support and tighten it securely on the front threaded pin (fig. 165) or on the rear threaded pin (fig. 166).



Before beginning to tow, turn the ignition key to MAR and then to STOP, without extracting it The steering column will automatically lock when the key is removed and the wheels cannot be steered.

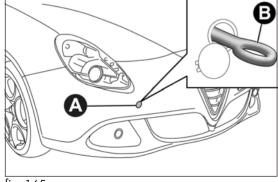
Remember that whilst towing it is necessary to exert a greater force when steering and braking because the brake servo and electro-mechanical power steering will be inoperative. Do not use wires for towing. Do not jerk. Be careful not to damage parts in contact with the car while towing. When towing the vehicle, you must comply with all specific traffic regulations and adopt an appropriate driving behaviour. Do not start the engine while towing the car. Clean the threaded seat carefully before fastening the hook. Make sure that the hook is fully fastened in the housing before towing the car.

**GETTING TO KNOW** YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING



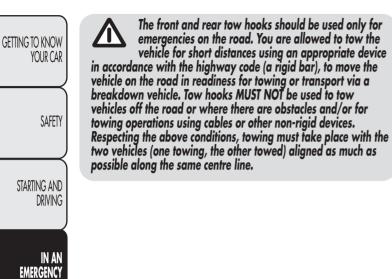


風 В fig. 166 A0K0137 SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

IN	DFX	
11.4	ULN	

fig. 165



SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

## SCHEDULED SERVICING

Correct servicing is essential in guaranteeing a long life for the car under the best conditions.

For this reason, Alfa Romeo has prepared a series of checks and service operations to be carried out every 30,000 kilometres (for 1.4 petrol versions) or every 35,000 kilometres (for 1750 Turbo Petrol and diesel versions).

Check the items on the Scheduled Servicing Plan (e.g. periodically check level of liquids, tyre pressure, etc.) before 30,000/35,000 km and between these services deadlines.

Scheduled Servicing is carried out at Alfa Romeo Authorized Services according to a set time schedule. If, during each operation, in addition to the ones scheduled, the need arises for further replacements or repairs, these may be carried out only with the explicit agreement of the Customer. If your car is used frequently for towing, the interval between one service operation and the next should be reduced.

#### WARNING

At 2,000 km from the next service operation the display will show a message.

The Scheduled Services intervals are set out by the Manufacturer. Failure to comply with the schedule may invalidate the warranty.

It is advisable to inform Alfa Romeo Authorized Services of any small faults without waiting for the next scheduled service.

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## **SCHEDULED SERVICING PLAN**

## 1.4 Turbo Petrol and 1.4 Turbo MultiAir VERSIONS

	Thousands of miles	18	36	54	72	90	108
	Thousands of kilometres	30	60	90	120	150	180
SAFETY	Months	24	48	72	96	120	144
J	Check tyre conditions/wear and adjust pressure, if required			٠			
STARTING AND	Check operation of lighting system (headlamps, direction indicators, hazard warning lights, passenger compartment, luggage compartment, instrument panel warning lights, etc.)	•	•	•	•	•	•
DRIVING	Check operation of windscreen washer/wiper system						
$\longrightarrow$	Check the position/wear of the windscreen/rear window wiper blades			•			
	Check condition and wear of front disc brake pads and operation of pad wear indicator						•
IN AN EMERGENCY	Check rear disc brake pad condition and wear						•
	Condition and status visual check: bodywork exterior, underbody protection, pipes and hoses (exhaust - fuel system - brakes), rubber elements (boots - sleeves - bushes etc.)	•	•	•	•	•	•
SERVICING AND	Check cleanliness of bonnet and boot locks, as well as cleanliness and lubrication of linkages						•
MAINTENANCE	Check and, if necessary, top up fluid levels (engine cooling, hydraulic brakes/clutch, screen washer, battery, etc.)	•	•	•	•	•	•
TECHNICAL	Check handbrake lever travel and adjust, if required			•			•
SPECIFICATIONS	Check timing belt condition						•
	Visually inspect conditions of the accessory drive belt(s)						•
	Check exhaust emissions.	•		•	٠		
INDEX	Check battery charge status and possibly recharge						

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

Thousands of miles	18	36	54	72	90	108	
Thousands of kilometres	30	60	90	120	150	180	GETTING TO KNOW
Months	24	48	72	96	120	144	YOUR CAR
Check engine management system operation (through the diagnosis socket)	•	•		•		•	$\succ$
Replace accessory drive belt(s)				•			SAFETY
Replacement of toothed timing belt (*)				•			
Replace spark plugs (**)	•	٠	•	•		٠	<u>}</u>
Replace air cleaner cartridge		٠				٠	STARTING AND
Change engine oil and oil filter (or every 24 months) (***)	•		•			٠	DRIVING
Change brake fluid (or every 24 months)							<u> </u>
Change pollen filter (or every 12 months)	•	•		•	•	•	
(*) Regardless of the distance covered, the timing belt must be changed every 4 years for particularly	demandina use (col	d climates	, town dri	vina, lonc	periods	of	IN AN EMERGENCY

(\*) Regardless of the distance covered, the timing belt must be changed every 4 years for particularly demanding use (cold climates, town driving, long periods of idling) or at least every 5 years.

(\*\*) For 1.4 Turbo Petrol and 1.4 Turbo MultiAir versions, in order to guarantee correct operation and prevent serious damage to the engine, it is essential to observe the following: only use spark plugs specifically certified for these engines; all spark plugs should be of the same type and brand (see the "Engine" paragraph in the "Technical Specifications" section); strictly comply with the replacement intervals in the Scheduled Servicing Plan; you are advised to contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to have plugs replaced.

(\*\*\*) If the vehicle has an annual mileage of less than 10,000 km, the engine oil and engine oil filter should be changed every 12 months.

MAINTENANCE

SERVICING AND

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## **1750 Turbo Petrol VERSIONS**

GETTING TO KNOW			42	63	84	105
YOUR CAR	Thousands of kilometres	35	70	105	140	175
	Months	24	48	72	96	120
SAFETY	Check tyre conditions/wear and adjust pressure, if required	•	•	•		•
JAILII	Check operation of lighting system (headlamps, direction indicators, hazard warning lights, passenger compartment, luggage compartment, instrument panel warning lights, etc.)	•	•	•	•	•
	Check operation of windscreen washer/wiper system	•	•			•
Starting and Driving	Check the position/wear of the windscreen/rear window wiper blades	•	•	•	٠	٠
2	Check condition and wear of front disc brake pads and operation of pad wear indicator	•	•	•	•	٠
	Check rear disc brake pad condition and wear	•	•	•		٠
IN AN EMERGENCY	Condition and status visual check: bodywork exterior, underbody protection, pipes and hoses (exhaust - fuel system - brakes), rubber elements (boots - sleeves - bushes etc.)	•	•	•	•	•
	Check cleanliness of bonnet and boot locks, as well as cleanliness and lubrication of linkages	•	•	•	•	٠
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE	Check and, if necessary, top up fluid levels (engine cooling, hydraulic brakes/clutch, screen washer, battery, etc.)	•	•	٠	•	•
	Check handbrake lever travel and adjust, if required	•	•	•	•	•
	Check timing belt condition		•			
	Visually inspect conditions of the accessory drive belt(s)		•			
SPECIFICATIONS	Check exhaust emissions.	•	•	•	•	•
$\longrightarrow$	Check battery charge status and possibly recharge	•	•	•	•	٠
INDEX	Check engine management system operation (through the diagnosis socket)	•	•	•	•	•
INDEX	Replace accessory drive belt(s)					

Thousands of miles	21	42	63	84	105	
Thousands of kilometres	35	70	105	140	175	GETTING TO KNOW
Months	24	48	72	96	120	YOUR CAR
Replacement of toothed timing belt (*)			•			$\succ$
Replace spark plugs		•		•		SAFETY
Replace air cleaner cartridge		•		•		
Change engine oil and oil filter (or every 12 months) (**)						<u>}</u>
Change brake fluid (or every 24 months)		•		•		STARTING AND
Change pollen filter (or every 12 months)	•	•		•		DRIVING

(\*) Regardless of the distance covered, the timing belt must be changed every 4 years for particularly demanding use (cold climates, town driving, long periods of

(\*\*) The actual interval for changing the oil and replacing the engine oil filter depends on the car usage conditions, it is signalled by the warning light or message (if present) in the instrument panel and must never exceed 24 months.

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## **Diesel VERSIONS**

GETTING TO KNOW	Thousands of miles	21	42	63	84	105
YOUR CAR	Thousands of kilometres	35	70	105	140	175
$\longrightarrow$	Months	24	48	72	96	120
SAFETY	Check tyre conditions/wear and adjust pressure, if required	•	•	•		•
UNILII	Check operation of lighting system (headlamps, direction indicators, hazard warning lights, passenger compartment, luggage compartment, instrument panel warning lights, etc.)	•	•	•	•	•
	Check operation of windscreen washer/wiper system	•	•	•		•
Starting and Driving	Check the position/wear of the windscreen/rear window wiper blades	•	•	•		•
	Check condition and wear of front disc brake pads and operation of pad wear indicator	•	•	•	٠	٠
	Check rear disc brake pad condition and wear	•	•	•	•	•
IN AN EMERGENCY	Condition and status visual check: bodywork exterior, underbody protection, pipes and hoses (exhaust - fuel system - brakes), rubber elements (boots - sleeves - bushes etc.)	•	•	•	•	•
	Check cleanliness of bonnet and boot locks, as well as cleanliness and lubrication of linkages	•	•	•		•
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE	Check and, if necessary, top up fluid levels (engine cooling, hydraulic brakes/clutch, screen washer, battery, etc.)	•	•	•	•	•
	Check handbrake lever travel and adjust, if required	•	•	•	٠	•
	Check exhaust fumes/emissions	•	•	•		•
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS	Visually inspect conditions of the accessory drive belts		•			•
JECIFICATIONS	Check engine management system operation (through the diagnosis socket)	•	•	•		•
$\longrightarrow$	Check battery charge status and possibly recharge	•	•			•
INDEX	Replace accessory drive belts			•		

Thousands of miles	21	42	63	84	105	
Thousands of kilometres	35	70	105	140	175	GETTING TO KNOW
Months	24	48	72	96	120	YOUR CAR
Replacement of toothed timing belt (*)				•		$\succ$
Replace fuel filter		•		•		SAFETY
Replace air cleaner cartridge		•		•		
Replace engine oil and oil filter (or every 24 months) (**) (***)						<u>}</u>
Change brake fluid (or every 24 months)		•		•		STARTING AND
Change pollen filter (or every 12 months)	•			•		DRIVING

(\*) Regardless of the distance covered, the timing belt must be changed every 4 years for particularly demanding use (cold climates, town driving, long periods of idling) or at least every 5 years.

(\*\*) The actual interval for changing the oil and replacing the engine oil filter depends on the car usage conditions, it is signalled by the warning light or message (if present) in the instrument panel and must never exceed 24 months.

(\*\*\*) If the car is mainly used in towns and cities, change the engine oil and filter every 12 months.

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## **PERIODIC CHECKS**



# Every 1,000 km or before long journeys, check and restore the following if necessary:

engine coolant, brake fluid and windscreen washer fluid level;
 tyre inflation pressure and condition;

- operation of lighting system (headlamps, direction indicators, hazard warning lights, etc.);
- operation of window washer/wiper system and positioning/wear of windscreen/rear window wiper blades

Check and top up, if required, the engine oil level every 3,000 km.

## HEAVY-DUTY USE OF THE CAR

If you use the car mainly under one of the following conditions:

□ towing a trailer or caravan;

□ dusty roads;

- □ short, repeated journeys (less than 7-8 km) at sub-zero outside temperatures;
- engine often idling or driving long distances at low speeds or long periods of idleness;

the following checks must be performed more frequently than indicated in the Scheduled Servicing Plan:

□ check front disc brake pad conditions and wear;

- □ check cleanliness of bonnet and boot locks, cleanliness and lubrication of linkage;
- visually inspect conditions of: engine, gearbox, transmission, pipes and hoses (exhaust - fuel system - brakes) and rubber elements (boots - sleeves - bushes - etc.);

□ check battery charge and battery fluid level (electrolyte);

🗆 visually inspect condition of the accessory drive belts;

□ check and, if necessary, change engine oil and replace oil filter;

□ check and, if necessary, replace pollen filter;

□ check and, if necessary, replace air cleaner.

## **CHECKING LEVELS**



When topping up, take care not to mix up the various types of fluids: they are not compatible with each other and could seriously damage the car.

Never smoke while working in the engine compartment: gas and inflammable vapours may be present, with the risk of fire. Be very careful when working in the engine compartment when the engine is hot: you may get burned. Remember that the fan may start up if the engine is hot: this could injure you. Make sure that scarves, ties and other loose fitting garments do not get caught up in moving parts.



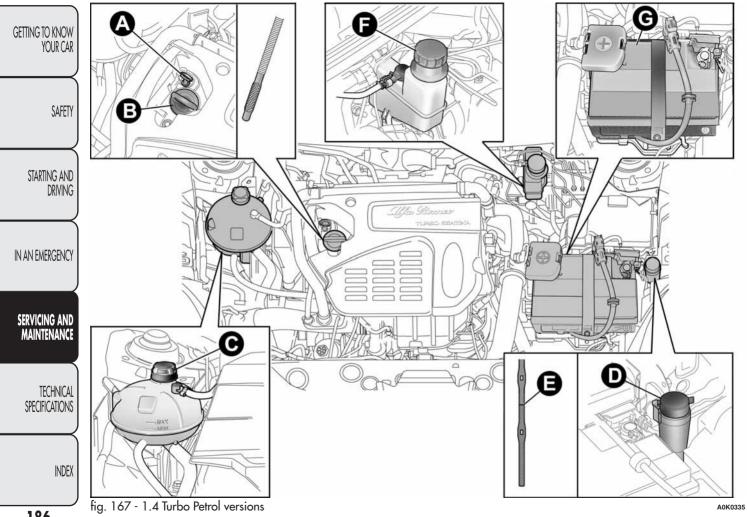
SAFETY

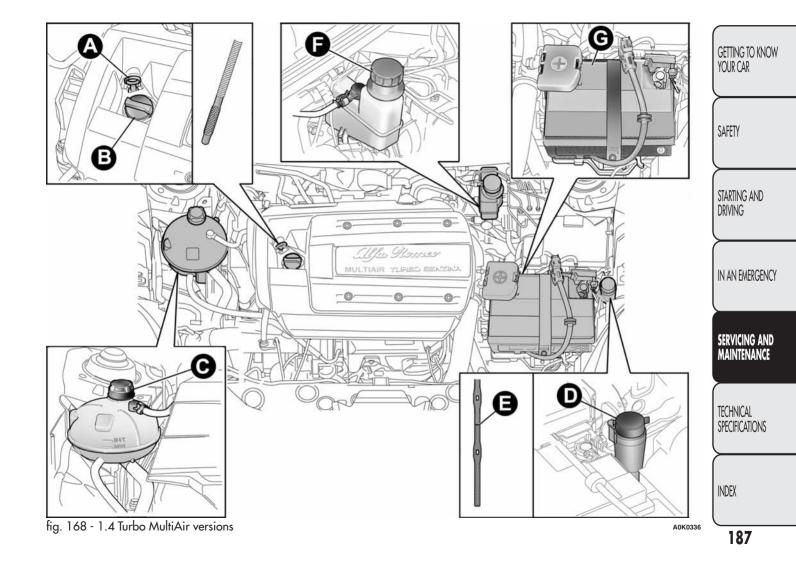


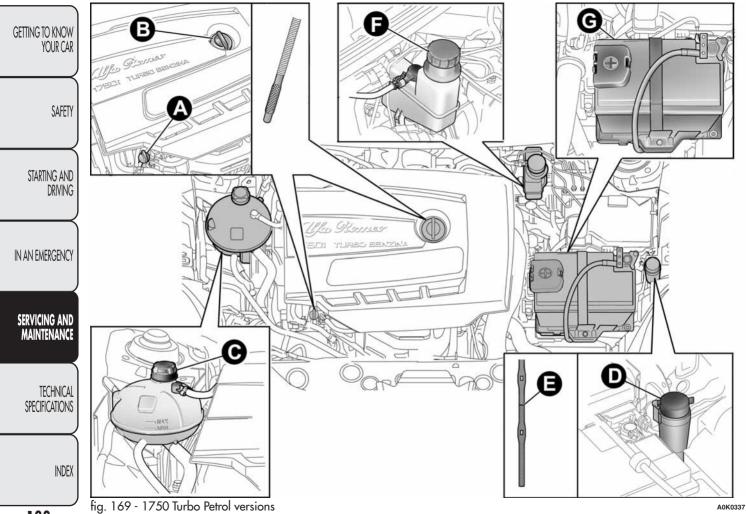
IN AN EMERGENCY

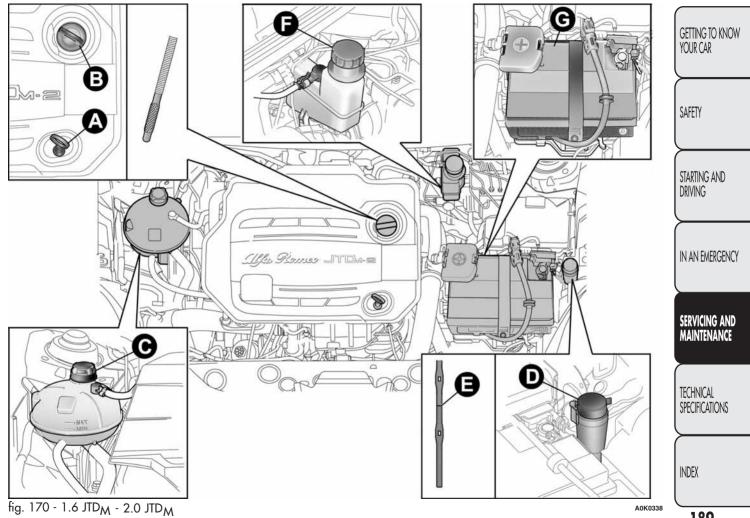
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS









## **ENGINE OIL**

Check that the oil level is between the MIN and MAX references on the dipstick A.

If the oil level is near or under the MIN reference, add oil through the filler B until it reaches the MAX reference.



The oil level must never exceed the MAX reference.



IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

> TECHNICA SPECIFICATIONS

> > INDEX

**GETTING TO KNOW** 

YOUR CAR

Take out the engine oil dipstick A, clean it with a lint-free cloth and reinsert it. Take it out again and check that the engine oil level is between the MIN and MAX references on the dipstick.



If the engine oil is being topped up, wait for the engine to cool down before loosening the filler plug, particularly for vehicles with aluminium plug (for versions/markets, where provided). WARNING: risk of burns!

## **Engine oil consumption**

The maximum engine oil consumption is approximately 400 grams every 1,000 km. When the car is new, the engine needs to run in, therefore the engine oil consumption can only be considered stabilised after the first 5,000 - 6,000 km.



Do not add oil with specifications other than those of the oil already in the engine.



Used engine oil and oil filters contain substances which are harmful to the environment. We recommend having the oil and oil filter replaced by Alfa Romeo Authorized

## **ENGINE COOLANT**

If the level is too low, unscrew reservoir cap C and add the fluid described in the chapter "Technical Specifications".



PARAFLU <sup>UP</sup> anti-freeze is used in the engine cooling system. Use the same fluid as in the cooling system when topping up. PARAFLU <sup>UP</sup> cannot be mixed with any other type of fluid. If this accidentally occurs, do not start the engine under any circumstances. Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.

The cooling system is pressurised. If necessary, only replace the cap with another genuine one or the operation of the system may be adversely affected. Do not remove the reservoir cap when the engine is hot; you risk scalding yourself.

#### WINDSCREEN/REAR WINDOW WASHER FLUID

If the level is too low, lift reservoir cap D and add the fluid described in the chapter "Technical Specifications".

IMPORTANT The headlight washer system will not operate when the fluid level is low, even though the windscreen/rear window washer continues to operate. On some versions/markets there is a reference notch E on the dipstick (see previous pages): ONLY the windscreen/rear window wiper operates beneath with the level below this reference.

Do not travel with the windscreen washer reservoir empty: the windscreen washer is essential for improving visibility. Repeated operation of the system without fluid could damage or cause rapid deterioration of some system components.



Some commercial windscreen washer additives are flammable: the engine compartment contains hot parts which could cause a fire on contact. **BRAKE FLUID** 

Check that the fluid is at the maximum level. If the fluid level in the reservoir is too low, undo reservoir cap E and add the fluid described in the chapter "Technical Specifications". **GETTING TO KNOW** YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING



Prevent brake fluid, which is highly corrosive, from coming into contact with painted parts. Should it happen, immediately wash with water.



Brake fluid is poisonous and highly corrosive. In the event of accidental contact, wash the parts immediately with water and neutral soap, then rinse with plenty of water. Consult a doctor immediately if you swallow the fluid.



The symbol () on the container indicates a synthetic brake fluid, distinguishing it from the mineral type. Using a mineral-type fluid will damage the special rubber seals of the braking system beyond repair.

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

IN AN EMERGENCY

SPECIFICATIONS

TECHNICAL

INDFX



## AIR CLEANER/POLLEN FILTER/DIESEL FILTER

Contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services to replace the filters.

## BATTERY

Battery F (see previous pages) does not require the electrolyte to be topped up with distilled water. A periodic check carried out at Alfa Romeo Authorized Services is, however, necessary to check efficiency.

## **REPLACING THE BATTERY**

If necessary, replace the battery with another genuine battery with the same specifications. Follow the battery manufacturer's instructions for maintenance.

# USEFUL ADVICE FOR EXTENDING THE LIFE OF YOUR BATTERY

To avoid draining your battery rapidly and maintain its efficiency over time, carefully observe the following instructions:

- when you park the car, ensure that the doors, bonnet and flaps are closed correctly, to prevent any roof lights from remaining on inside the passenger compartment;
- □ switch off all roof lights inside the car: the car is however equipped with a system which switches all internal lights off automatically;
- do not keep accessories (e.g. sound system, hazard lights, etc.) switched on for a long time when the engine is not running;
- □ before performing any operation on the electrical system, disconnect the negative battery pole;

IMPORTANT After the battery is disconnected, the steering must be initialised. The  $\bigoplus$  warning light switches on to indicate this. To carry out this procedure, simply turn the steering wheel all the way from one end to the other or drive in a straight line for about a hundred metres.

IMPORTANT If the charge level remains under 50% for a long time, the battery is damaged by sulphation, reducing its capacity and efficiency at start-up.

The battery will also be more at risk of freezing (this can happen as early as  $-10^{\circ}$ C). Refer to "Storing the car" in "Starting and driving" if the car is left parked for a long time.

If after having purchased your car you decide to add accessories requiring permanent electrical power (alarm etc.) or accessories that require large amounts of power, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services. They can calculate the overall electrical requirement.



Battery liquid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with the skin and the eyes. Keep naked flames and sources of sparks away from the battery: risk of explosion and fire.



Using the battery with insufficient fluid irreparably damages the battery and may cause an explosion.



Incorrect installation of electric and electronic devices may cause severe damage to your car. After purchasing your car, if you wish to install any accessories (anti-theft, radio phone etc.), contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services, who will suggest the most appropriate devices for your vehicle and will, most importantly, advise you if a higher capacity battery needs to be installed.



Batteries contain substances which are very dangerous for the environment. For the replacement of the battery, contact Alfa Romeo Authorized Services.



If the car will be unused for an extended period of time in extremely cold weather conditions, remove the battery and store it in a heated area to prevent it from freezing.



When performing any operation on the battery or near it, always protect your eyes with special goggles.

#### **GETTING TO KNOW** YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDFX

## **GETTING TO KNOW** Before embarking on a long trip, and every two weeks, check the tyre inflation pressure and space-saver wheel. Check the tyres when cold. YOUR CAR While driving the car, the pressure increases under standard conditions: for the correct tyre inflation pressure, see "Wheels" paragraph in the "Technical specifications" chapter. SAFETY Incorrect pressure causes abnormal tyre wear fig. 171: A normal pressure: tread evenly worn; low pressure: tread particularly worn at the edges; STARTING AND high pressure: tread particularly worn in the centre. DRIVING The tyres must be replaced when the tread is less than 1.6 mm thick. IN AN EMERGENCY SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE A. 100 YO, 10 YU, 10 YU TECHNICA M H H H SPECIFICATIONS INDEX fig. 171

WHEELS AND TYRES

IMPORTANT

Take the following precautions to prevent damage to the tyres:

- □ avoid braking suddenly, racing starts and violent impact against the curb, potholes or other obstacles and driving for extended periods on uneven road surfaces:
- periodically check that the tyres have no cuts in the side wall, abnormal swelling or irregular tyre wear;
- avoid travelling with the car overloaded. If you puncture a tyre, stop immediately and replace it;
- □ change the position of the tyres every 10-15 thousand kilometres, keeping them on the same side of the car to avoid inverting the direction of rotation:
- □ tyres age even if they are not used much. Cracks in the tread and on the sidewalls are a sign of ageing. Have the tyres checked by specialised personnel if they have been fitted for longer than 6 years. Remember to check the space-saver wheel very carefully;
- □ In the case of replacement, always fit new tyres, avoiding those of dubious origin:

□ if a tyre is replaced, also replace the inflation valve.



A0K0023

Remember that the road holding qualities of your car also depend on the correct inflation pressure of the tyres.



If the pressure is too low the tyre overheats and can be seriously damaged.



Do not cross switch the tyres, moving them from the right of the car to the left and vice versa.



Never submit alloy rims to repainting treatments requiring the use of temperatures exceeding 150°C. The mechanical properties of the wheels could be

# WINDSCREEN/REAR WINDOW WIPER

## BLADES

We recommend replacing the blades once a year.

A few simple precautions can reduce the possibility of damage to the blades:

□ if the temperature falls below zero, make sure that ice has not frozen the rubber against the glass. Use a de-icing product to release it if required;

□ remove any snow from the window;

□ do not operate the windscreen/rear window wipers on dry glass.



Driving with worn windscreen/rear window wiper blades is a serious hazard, because visibility is reduced in bad weather. GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY



TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## **GETTING TO KNOW** YOUR CAR

## **Replacing the wiper blades**

Proceed as follows:

- □ raise the wiper arm, press tab A fig. 172 of the attachment spring and remove the blade from the arm;
- □ fit the new blade by inserting the tab into the special slot in the arm. Make sure that it is properly locked into place;

□ lower the windscreen wiper arm on the windscreen.



IN AN EMERGENCY

SAFETY

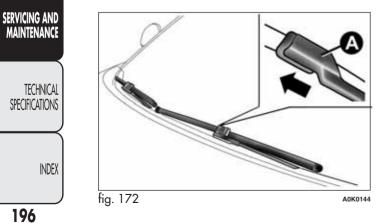
Do not operate the windscreen wiper with the blades lifted from the windscreen.

## Lifting the wiper blades

When the wiper blades have to be lifted from the windscreen (i.e. in the event of snow), proceed as follows:

□ turn the ignition key to the MAR position;

- operate the lever to the right of the steering wheel to activate a windscreen wiper stroke (see paragraph "Window washing" in chapter "Getting to know your car");
- □ turn the ignition key to the STOP position when the driver's side wiper blade reaches the windscreen side pillar and lift the windscreen wiper to the rest position;
- □ bring the wiper blades back into contact with the windscreen before activating the windscreen wiper.



# Replacing the rear window wiper blade

Proceed as follows:

raise cover A fig. 173, undo nut B and remove arm C;
 correctly position the new arm, fully tighten nut B then lower cover A.

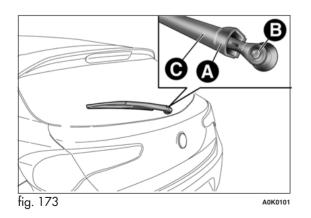
## **SPRAY NOZZLES**

## Windscreen washer

The window washer jets are fixed fig. 174.

If the jet of fluid is inadequate, firstly check that there is fluid in the reservoir: see "Checking fluid levels" in this section).

Then check that the nozzle holes are not clogged, if necessary using a needle.



## **Rear Window Washer**

The nozzle holder is on the rear window fig. 175. The rear window washer jets are fixed.

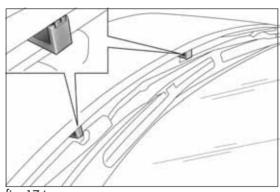
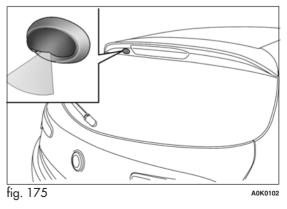


fig. 174

A0K0139





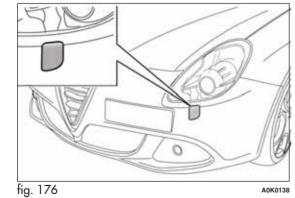


## **HEADLIGHT WASHERS**

(for versions/markets, where provided)

They are located inside the front bumper fig. 176.

They are activated when the dipped beam and/or main beam headlights are on and the windscreen washer is activated. Check the correct operation and cleanliness of nozzles at regular intervals



## BODYWORK

#### **PROTECTION AGAINST ATMOSPHERIC AGENTS**

The car is equipped with the best available technological solutions to effectively protect the bodywork against corrosion.

These are the most important:

- □ painting products and systems which give the car resistance to corrosion and abrasion
- □ use of galvanised (or pretreated) steel sheets, with high resistance to corrosion;
- □ spraying of plastic parts, with a protective function in the more exposed points: underdoor, inner wing, edges, etc;
- □ use of "open" boxed sections to prevent condensation and pockets of moisture which could favour the formation of rust inside;
- 🗆 use of special films to protect against abrasion in exposed areas (e.g. rear wing, doors, etc.).

## **BODY AND UNDERBODY WARRANTY**

The car is covered by warranty against perforation due to corrosion of any original element of the structure or body. For the general terms of this warranty, refer to the Warranty Booklet.

## **PRESERVING THE BODYWORK**

#### Paint

Touch up abrasions and scratches immediately to prevent the formation of rust.

Maintenance of paintwork consists of washing the car: the frequency depends on the conditions and environment where the car is used. For example, it is advisable to wash the car more often in areas with high levels of atmospheric pollution or salted roads.

To correctly wash the car, follow these instruction:

- □ remove the aerial from the roof when using a carwash;
- □ if high pressure jets or cleaners are used to wash the car, maintain a distance of at least 40 cm from the bodywork to avoid damage or alteration. Bear in mind that a build up of water could cause damage to the car in the long term.
- □ wash the body using a low pressure jet of water;
- □ wipe a sponge with a slightly soapy solution over the bodywork, frequently rinsing the sponge;

□ rinse well with water and dry with a jet of air or a chamois leather.

Dry the less visible parts (e.g. door frames, bonnet, headlight frames etc.) with special care, as water may stagnate more easily in these areas. Do not wash the car after it has been left in the sun or with the bonnet hot: this may alter the shine of the paintwork.

Exterior plastic parts must be cleaned in the same way as the rest of the car.



Detergents pollute the environment. Only wash your car in areas equipped to collect and treat wastewater from this type of activity.



In order to preserve the aesthetic properties of the paintwork, abrasive products and/or polishes should not be used to clean the car.

#### GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

IMPORTANT

Avoid parking under trees; the resin dropped by trees makes the paintwork go opaque and increases the possibility of corrosion.

Bird droppings must be washed off immediately and thoroughly as the acid they contain is particularly aggressive.

## Windows

Use specific detergents and clean cloths to prevent scratching or altering the transparency.

IMPORTANT Wipe the inside surface of the rear window gently with a cloth in the direction of the filaments to avoid damaging the heating device.

#### Front headlights

Use a soft, damp cloth soaked in water and detergent for washing cars.

IMPORTANT Never use aromatic substances (e.g. petrol) or ketenes (e.g. acetone) for cleaning the plastic lenses of the front headlights.

IMPORTANT When cleaning the car with a pressure washer, keep the water jet at least 20 cm away from the headlights.

STARTING AND DRIVING

SAFETY

IN AN EMERGENCY

## SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

# **GETTING TO KNOW** YOUR CAR SAFETY STARTING AND DRIVING IN AN EMERGENCY SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE TECHNICAL

#### **Engine compartment**

At the end of every winter, wash the engine compartment thoroughly, taking care not to aim the jet of water directly at the electronic control units or at the windscreen wiper motors. Have this operation performed at a specialised workshop.

IMPORTANT The washing should take place with the engine cold and the ignition key in the STOP position. After washing, make sure that the various protective devices (e.g. rubber caps and guards) have not been removed or damaged.

## INTERIORS

Periodically check for water puddles under the mats that could cause the panels to rust.

Never use flammable products, such as petrol ether or rectified petrol to clean the inside of the car. The electrostatic charges which are generated by rubbing during the cleaning operation may cause a fire.

Do not keep aerosol cans in the car: they might explode. Aerosol cans must not be exposed to a temperature exceeding 50°C. When the car is exposed to sunlight, the internal temperature can greatly exceed this value.

#### SEATS AND FABRIC PARTS

Remove dust with a soft brush or a vacuum cleaner. It is advisable to use a moist brush on velvet upholstery. Rub the seats with a sponge soaked in a solution of neutral detergent and water.

SPECIFICATIONS

## LEATHER SEATS

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Remove the dry dirt with a buckskin or slightly damp cloth, without exercising too much pressure. Remove liquid or oil stains using a dry absorbent cloth, without rubbing. Then clean with a soft cloth or buckskin cloth dampened with water and neutral soap. If the stain persists, use specific products and observe the instructions carefully.

IMPORTANT Never use alcohol. Make sure that the cleaning products used contain no alcohol or alcohol derivatives, even in small quantities.

## **PLASTIC AND COATED PARTS**

Clean interior plastic parts with a damp cloth (if possible made from microfibre), and a solution of water and neutral, non-abrasive detergent. To clean oily or persistent stains, use specific products free from solvents and designed to maintain the original appearance and colour of the components.

Remove any dust using a microfibre cloth, if necessary moistened with water. The use of paper tissues is not recommended as these may leave residues.

IMPORTANT Never use alcohol, petrols and derivatives to clean the instrument panel lens.

## LEATHER PARTS

(for versions/markets, where provided)

Use only water and neutral soap to clean these parts. Never use alcohol or alcohol-based products. Before using a specific product for cleaning interiors, make sure that it does not contain alcohol and/or alcohol based substances. GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## **TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS**

#### GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

**TECHNICAL** 

INDEX

**SPECIFICATIONS** 

DRIVING

## **IDENTIFICATION DATA**

The identification details of the car are: □ V.I.N. plate;

Chassis marking;
 Body paintwork identification plate;

□ Engine marking.

## V.I.N. PLATE

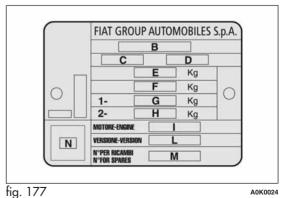
This plate is fitted to the engine compartment front crossmember and contains the following data fig. 177:

- **B** Type-approval number.
- **C** Vehicle type identification code
- D Chassis serial number.
- E Maximum authorised weight of vehicle fully laden
- F Maximum authorised weight of vehicle fully laden plus trailer.
- **G** Maximum permitted weight on first (front) axle
- $\ensuremath{\textbf{H}}$  Maximum permitted weight on second (rear) axle

I Engine type.

- L Bodywork version code.
- M Spares number.

N Correct value of smoke coefficient (for diesel engines)



## **CHASSIS MARKING**

This is printed on the passenger compartment floor, near the front right seat.

Slide the flap A fig. 178 forward to access.

The marking includes:

□ vehicle type (ZAR 940000);

□ chassis serial number.

# BODYWORK PAINT IDENTIFICATION PLATE

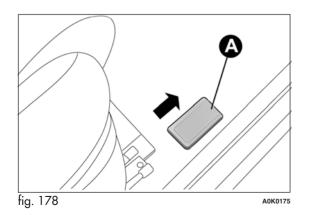
It is applied under the bonnet and shows the following data fig. 179:

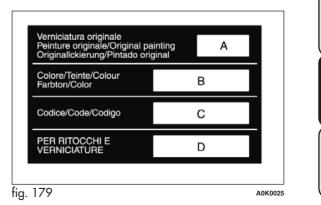
A Paint manufacturer.

B Colour name.

**C** Fiat colour code.

**D** Respray and touch up code.





**ENGINE MARKING** This is stamped on the cylinder block and gives the model and the

chassis serial number

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS



## **ENGINE CODES - BODYWORK VERSIONS**

TING TO KNOW YOUR CAR		Engine code	Body versions
	etrol 120 HP	1004 (000	940FXA1A 00
		198A4000	940FXA1A 00B (*)
SAFETY 1.4 Turbo B	atural 105 LID (**)	0.4001000	940FXN1A 12
	1.4 Turbo Petrol 105 HP (**)	940B1000	940FXN1A 12 12B (*)
	-+	0.404.4000	940FXF1A 05
STARTING AND	1.4 Turbo Petrol 115 HP (**)	940A6000	940FXF1A 05B (*)
DRIVING	1.4 Turbo MultiAir		940FXB1A 01E
		0.404.2000	940FXB1A 01F (***)
	IUITIAIF	940A2000	940FXB1A 01G (****)
AN EMERGENCY			940FXB1A 01H (***) (****)
	\ <b> x<sup>0</sup> &amp; \$</b> /★★\	05540000	940FXG1A 06C
SERVICING AND		955A8000	940FXG1A 06D (*)
MAINTENANCE 1750 Turbo	Petrol	940A1000	940FXC1A 02
		0.404.2000	940FXD1A 03C
1.6 JTD <sub>M</sub>		940A3000	940FXD1A 03D (*)

(\*) Versions with oversized brake calipers (\*\*) For versions/markets, where provided (\*\*\*) Versions with oversized brake calipers (16" tyres excluded) (\*\*\*\*) Versions for markets with reduced towing capacity (500 kg)

INDEX

SPECIFICATIONS

Versions	Engine code	Body versions	
	0.404.4000	940FXE1A 04	GETTING TO KNOW
2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub> 170 HP	940A4000	940FXE1A 04B (*)	YOUR CAR
	0.404.9000	940FXM1A 09	<u>}</u>
2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub> 136 HP (**)	940A8000	940FXM1A 09B (*)	SAFETY
	940A5000	940FXL1A 08	
2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub> 140 HP (**)	940A3000	940FXL1A 08B (*)	<u> </u>
2.0 ITD 142 LID (**)	940A7000	940FXH1A 07	STARTING AND
2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub> 163 HP (**)	940A7000	940FXH1A 07B (*)	DRIVING

(\*) Versions with oversized brake calipers (\*\*) For versions/markets, where provided

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## ENGINE

GETTING TO KNOW	GENERAL INFORMATION	1.4 Turbo Petrol 105 HP (*)	1.4 Turbo petrol 115/120 HP
YOUR CAR	Facility and	940B1000	940A6000 (*)
$\longrightarrow$	Engine code	94081000	198A4000
	Cycle	Otto	Otto
SAFETY	Number and arrangement of cylinders	4 in line	4 in line
	Piston diameter and travel (mm)	72.0 x 84.0	72.0 x 84.0
STARTING AND	Total displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )	1368	1368
DRIVING	Compression ratio	9,8	9,8
	Maximum power (EC) (kW)	77	85 (*) / 88
	Maximum power (EC) (HP)	105	115 (*) / 120
IN AN EMERGENCY	corresponding engine speed (rpm)	5000	5000
J	Maximum torque (EC) (Nm)	206	206
	Maximum torque (EC) (kgm)	21	21
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE	corresponding engine speed (rpm)	2000	1750
MAINTLINAINCL	Spark plugs	NGK IKR9F8	NGK IKR9F8
TECHNICAL	Fuel	Unleaded petrol 95 RON (EN 228 Specification)	Unleaded petrol 95 RON (EN 228 Specification)
SPECIFICATIONS	(*) For versions/markets, where provided		

GENERAL INFORMATION	1.4 Turb	o MultiAir	1750 Tur	bo Petrol	
	940	940A2000		1000	GETTING TO KNOW
Engine code	955A	8000 (*)	9404	1000	YOUR CAR
Cycle	(	Otto	0	tto	·
Number and arrangement of cylinders	4 i	n line	4 in	line	SAFETY
Piston diameter and travel (mm)	72.0	x 84.0	83.0	x 80.5	
Total displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )	1	368	17	/42	
Compression ratio		9,8		,8	STARTING AND
Maximum power (EC) (kW)	125	120 (*)	17	2,5	DRIVING
Maximum power (EC) (HP)	170	163 (*)	2	35	
corresponding engine speed (rpm)	5500	5500 (*)	5500		
	NATURAL	DYNAMIC	NATURAL	DYNAMIC	IN AN EMERGENCY
Maximum torque (EC) (Nm)	230	250	300	340	
Maximum torque (EC) (kgm)	23,4	25,4	30,5	34,6	
corresponding engine speed (rpm)	2250	2500	4500	1900	SERVICING AND
Spark plugs	NGK	IKR9F8	NGK ILKAR7D6G		
Fuel	Unleaded petrol 9 (EN 228 s	Unleaded petrol 95 RON or 98 RON (EN 228 specification) Unleaded petrol 95 RON of (EN 228 specification)			TECHNICAL
(*) For versions/markets, where provided	_				SPECIFICATIONS

	GENERAL INFORMATION	ION 1.6 JTD <sub>M</sub>			м 170 НР			
GETTING TO KNOW	Type code	9404	940A3000		940A4000			
YOUR CAR	Cycle	Di	esel	Di	esel			
	Number and arrangement of cylinders	4 ir	1 line	4 ir	n line			
SAFETY	Piston diameter and travel (mm)	79.5	x 80.5	83 x	90.4			
	Total displacement (cm³)	15	598	19	256			
$\longrightarrow$	Compression ratio	10	6,5	10	6,5			
STARTING AND	Maximum power (EEC) (kW)	7	77		25			
DRIVING	Maximum power (EEC) (HP)	1	105		70			
	corresponding engine speed (rpm)	40	4000		000			
		NATURAL	DYNAMIC	NATURAL	DYNAMIC			
IN AN EMERGENCY	Max torque (EEC) (Nm)	280	320	320	350			
	Maximum torque (EEC) (kgm)	28,5	32,5	32,5	35,6			
	corresponding engine speed (rpm)	1500	1750	1500	1750			
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE	Spark plugs		-		-		-	
	Fuel	Diesel for motor vehicles Diesel for motor ve (EN 590 specification) (EN 590 specification)						

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

GENERAL INFORMATION	2.0 JTD	м 163 HP(*)	2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub>	136/140 HP(*)		
Ensine and	0.4	940A7000		940A8000 (**)		
Engine code	94	UA/000	94	0A5000	- YOUR CAR	
Cycle		Diesel		Diesel		
Number and arrangement of cylinders	4	4 in line		l in line	SAFETY	
Piston diameter and travel (mm)	83	3 x 90.4	83	3 x 90.4		
Total displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )		1956		1956		
Compression ratio		16,5		16,5	STARTING AND	
Maximum power (EEC) (kW)	120		](	DRIVING		
Maximum power (EEC) (HP)		163	1:	36/140		
corresponding engine speed (rpm)		4000		3750		
	NATURAL	DYNAMIC	NATURAL	DYNAMIC	IN AN EMERGENCY	
Max torque (EEC) (Nm)	320	350	320	350		
Maximum torque (EEC) (kgm)	32,5	35,6	32,5	35,6		
corresponding engine speed (rpm)	1500	1750	1500	1750	- SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE	
Spark plugs				· ·		
Fuel	Diesel for motor vehi	cles (EN 590 specification)	Diesel for motor vehi	cles (EN 590 specification)	TECHNICAL	

(\*) For versions/markets, where provided (\*\*) 2.0 JTD\_M 136 HP versions

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

# FUEL SUPPLY YOUR CAR Fuel supply YOUR CAR I.4 Turbo MultiAir Phased sequential electronic injection with knock control and variable intake valve actuation SAFETY I.4 Turbo Petrol - 1750 Turbo Petrol Electronically controlled phased sequential multipoint electronic injection with turbo and intercooler SAFETY I.4 TURDO - 2.0 UD Electronically controlled Common Rail MultiJet direct injection with

 $\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} 1.6 \text{ JTD}_{M} - 2.0 \text{ JTD}_{M} \end{array}$ 

Modifications or repairs to the fuel supply system that are not carried out correctly or do not take the system's technical specifications into account can cause malfunctions leading to the risk of fire.

turbo and intercooler

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

DRIVING

## TRANSMISSION

Gearbox	Clutch	Drive	GETTING TO KNOW
			YOUR CAR
Six forward speed plus reverse	Self-adjusting pedal without idle stroke	Front	<u> </u>
			SAFETY
speeds			
	Six forward speed plus reverse with synchronisers for the engagement of the forward	Six forward speed plus reverse with synchronisers for the engagement of the forward stroke	Six forward speed plus reverse with synchronisers for the engagement of the forward Self-adjusting pedal without idle stroke

INDEX

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## BRAKES

GETTING TO KNOW	Versions	Front brakes	Rear brakes	Parking brake		
YOUR CAR	1.4 Turbo Petrol					
SAFETY	1.4 Turbo MultiAir	Self-ventilated discs	Disc	Controlled by hand lever, acting on the rear brakes		
	1750 Turbo Petrol					
	1.6 JTD <sub>M</sub>					
	2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub>					

IMPORTANT Water, ice and salt spread on the roads may deposit on the brake disks reducing braking efficiency the first time the brakes are applied.

IN AN EMERGENCY

STARTING AND DRIVING



## **SUSPENSION**

Versions	Front	Rear	GETTING TO KNOW
1.4 Turbo Petrol			YOUR CAR
1.4 Turbo MultiAir			<u> </u>
1750 Turbo Petrol	MacPherson independent wheel with anti-roll bar	Multi-link structure system	
1.6 JTD <sub>M</sub>			SAFETY
2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub>			

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## **STEERING SYSTEM**

	Versions Turning sinds (houth to houth)						
GETTING TO KNOW	Versions	Turning circle (kerb to kerb)	Туре				
YOUR CAR	1.4 Turbo Petrol						
	1.4 Turbo MultiAir						
	1750 Turbo Petrol	10.55 m	Rack and pinion with electro-mechanical power steering (Dual Pinion architecture)				
SAFETY	1.6 JTD <sub>M</sub>		seering (boar rimon architectore)				
	2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub>						



## WHEELS

#### **RIMS AND TYRES**

Pressed steel or alloy rims. Tubeless radial carcass tyres. The vehicle registration document also lists all type-approved tyres.

IMPORTANT If there are any discrepancies between the Owner handbook and the registration document, take the information from the latter.

For safe driving, the car must be fitted with tyres of the same make and type on all wheels.

IMPORTANT Do not use tubes with tubeless tires.

#### **SPACE-SAVER WHEEL**

Pressed steel rim. Tubeless tyre.

#### **READING THE TYRE CODE**

#### Example fig. 180: 205/55 R 16 91V

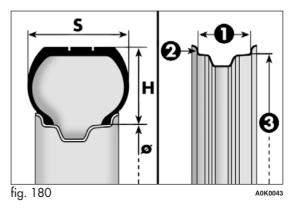
205 Rated width (S, distance in mm between sidewalls)
55 Height/width ratio (H/S) as a percentage
R Radial tyre
16 Rim diameter in inches (Ø)
91 Load rating (capacity)
∨ Maximum speed index

#### Maximum speed index

Q up to 160 km/h R up to 170 km/h S up to 180 km/h T up to 190 km/h U up to 200 km/h H up to 210 km/h V up to 240 km/h W up to 270 km/h Y up to 300 km/h

#### Maximum speed index for snow tyres

**QM + S** up to 160 km/h **TM + S** up to 190 km/h **HM + S** up to 210 km/h



GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR SAFETY STARTING AND DRIVING IN AN EMERGENCY SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE TECHNICAL **SPECIFICATIONS** INDFX

	Lo	ad rating (capacity)
SETTING TO KNOW	<b>60</b> = 250 kg	<b>76</b> = 400 kg
YOUR CAR	<b>61</b> = 257 kg	<b>77</b> = 412 kg
$ \longrightarrow $	<b>62</b> = 265 kg	<b>78</b> = 425 kg
SAFETY	<b>63</b> = 272 kg	<b>79</b> = 437 kg
JAILII	<b>64</b> = 280 kg	<b>80</b> = 450 kg
$\longrightarrow$	<b>65</b> = 290 kg	<b>81</b> = 462 kg
STARTING AND	<b>66</b> = 300 kg	<b>82</b> = 475 kg
DRIVING	<b>67</b> = 307 kg	<b>83</b> = 487 kg
$\longrightarrow$	<b>68</b> = 315 kg	<b>84</b> = 500 kg
	<b>69</b> = 325 kg	<b>85</b> = 515 kg
N AN EMERGENCY	<b>70</b> = 335 kg	<b>86</b> = 530 kg
	<b>71</b> = 345 kg	<b>87</b> = 545 kg
	<b>72</b> = 355 kg	<b>88</b> = 560 kg
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE	<b>73</b> = 365 kg	<b>89</b> = 580 kg
	<b>74</b> = 375 kg	<b>90</b> = 600 kg
	<b>75</b> = 387 kg	<b>91</b> = 615 kg
TECHNICAL		

#### CORRECT READING OF THE RIM CODE

#### Example fig. 180: 7 J x 16 H2 ET 41

**7** rim diameter in inches (1).

- J rim drop centre outline (side projection where the tyre bead rests) (2).
- **16** rim fitting diameter in inches (corresponds to diameter of the tyre to be mounted)  $(3 = \emptyset)$ .

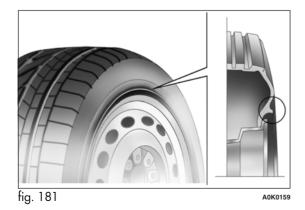
**H2** shape and number of humps (circumference measurement which keeps the bead of tubeless tyres in position on the rim).

**ET 41** wheel camber (distance between the disc/rim support plane and the wheel rim centre line).

**SPECIFICATIONS** 

#### **RIM PROTECTOR TYRES**

DO NOT fit wheel hub caps when using integral hub caps fixed (with springs) to the steel rim and after sale tyres provided with Rim Protector (fig. 181). Use of unsuitable tyres and wheel caps may cause sudden loss of tyre pressure.





#### **RIMS AND TYRES PROVIDED AS STANDARD**

GETTING TO KNOW	Versions	Rims	Turner mussided	Snow have	Space-saver wheel	
YOUR CAR		KIMS	Tyres provided	Snow tyres	Rim - Tyre	
	1.4 Turbo	7Jx16 H2 ET 41 (*)	195/55 R16 91V REINFORCED (*)	195/55 R16 91Q REINFORCED (*)	T105/70 D1/	
SAFETY	Petrol 1.4 Turbo	7Jx16 H2 ET 41	205/55 R16 91V	205/55 R16 91Q	T135/70 R16 100M	4B x 16 ET 22
	MultiAir	7 1/2 Jx17 H2 ET 41	225/45 R17 91W	225/45 R17 91Q	T125/80 R17 99M	4B x 17 ET 25
STARTING AND	1.6 JTD <sub>M</sub> 2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub>	7 1/2 Jx18 H2 ET 41	225/40 R18 92W REINFORCED (**)	225/40 R18 92Q REINFORCED		
DRIVING	1.4 Turbo Petrol (***) 1.4 Turbo	7 1/2 Jx17 H2 ET 41	225/45 R17 91W	225/45 R17 91Q	T125/80 R17	
1.4 Turbo           MultiAir (***)           IN AN EMERGENCY           1.6 JTD <sub>M</sub> (***)           2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub> (***)	7 1/2 Jx18 H2 ET 41	225/40 R18 92W REINFORCED (**)	225/40 R18 92Q REINFORCED	99M	4B x 17 ET 25	
	1750 Turbo	7 1/2 Jx17 H2 ET 41	225/45 R17 91W	225/45 R17 91Q	T125/80 R17	4B x 17 ET 25
	1750 Iurbo Petrol	7 1/2 Jx18 H2 ET 41	225/40 R18 92W REINFORCED (**)	225/40 R18 92Q REINFORCED	99M	

(\*) For versions/markets, where provided (\*\*) Tyres which cannot be fitted with chains (\*\*\*) Versions with oversized brake calipers

On versions with 195/55 R16", 205/55 R16" e 225/45 R17" tyres, reduced size snow chains can be used, with a maximum projection of 9 mm beyond the tyre profile.

INDEX

TECHNICAL

SPECIFICATIONS

#### **COLD TYRE INFLATION PRESSURE (bar)**

	l ·	Í	TYRES PROVIDED			
		MEDIUM L	MEDIUM LOAD		)	GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR
VERSIONS	MEASUREMENT	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
1.4 Turbo petrol 115/120 HP 1.6 JTD <sub>M</sub>	195/55 R16 91V REINFORCED 205/55 R16 91V 225/45 R17 91W 225/40 R18 92W REINFORCED	2,6 2,3 2,3 2,6	2,2 2,1 2,1 2,2	3,0 2,7 2,7 3,0	2,6 2,3 2,3 2,6	SAFETY
1.4 Turbo Petrol 105 HP (*)	195/55 R16 91V REINFORCED 205/55 R16 91V 225/45 R17 91W 225/40 R18 92W REINFORCED	2,6 2,3 2,3 2,5	2,2 2,1 2,1 2,3	2,9 2,5 2,6 2,9	2,5 2,1 2,2 2,5	STARTING AND DRIVING
1.4 Turbo MultiAir 2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub>	195/55 R16 91V REINFORCED 205/55 R16 91V 225/45 R17 91W 225/40 R18 92W REINFORCED	2,6 2,3 2,3 2,6	2,2 2,1 2,1 2,2	3,0 2,7 2,7 3,0	2,6 2,3 2,3 2,6	IN AN EMERGENCY
1750 Turbo Petrol	225/45 R17 91W 225/40 R18 92W REINFORCED	2,3 2,6	2,1 2,2	2,7 3,0	2,3 2,6	SERVICING AND
Space-saver wheel	T135/70 R16 100M T125/80 R17 99M		4.2			MAINTENANCE

(\*) For versions/markets, where provided

Add +0.3 bar to the prescribed pressure when the tyres are warm. Check correct pressure on a cold tyre.

With snow tyres, add +0.2 bar to the inflation pressure value prescribed for standard tyres.

When travelling at speeds over 160 km/h, inflate the tyres to the values specified for fully laden conditions.

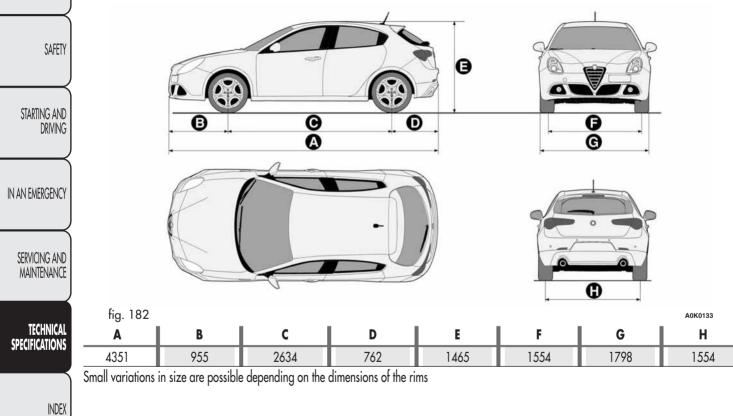
219

INDEX

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## DIMENSIONS

Dimensions are expressed in mm and refer to the vehicle equipped with its original tyres. Height is measured with car unladen. **BOOT VOLUME** Unladen capacity (V.D.A. standards): =  $350 \text{ dm}^3$ 



GETTING TO KNOW

YOUR CAR

## PERFORMANCE

Versions	Top speed (km/h)	Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (secs)	GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR
1.4 Turbo Petrol 120 HP	195	9,4	
1.4 Turbo Petrol 105 HP (*)	186	10,9	
1.4 Turbo Petrol 115 HP (*)	192	9,4	SAFETY
1.4 Turbo MultiAir	218	7,8	l
1.4 Turbo MultiAir (*)	215	7,8	
1750 Turbo Petrol	242	6,8	STARTING AND DRIVING
1.6 JTD <sub>M</sub>	185	11,3	
2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub>	218	8,0	
2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub> 136 HP (*)	205	-	IN AN EMERGENCY
2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub> 140 HP (*)	205	9,0	
2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub> 163 HP (*)	215	8,0	$\succ$
(*) For versions/markets, where provided			SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

221

INDEX

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## **WEIGHTS**

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR	Versions	1.4 Turbo Petrol	1.4 Turbo MultiAir	1750 Turbo Petrol
	Weight empty (with all fluids, fuel tank 90% full and without optional equipment):	1280	1290	1320
SAFETY	Payload including the driver: (*)	505	505	505
	Maximum permitted loads (**)			
$\longrightarrow$	– front axle:	1100	1100	1100
STARTING AND	- rear axle:	850	850	850
DRIVING	- total:	1785	1795	1825
$\longrightarrow$	Towable loads (kg)			
	– trailer with brakes:	1300	1300	1300
IN AN EMERGENCY	– trailer without brakes:	500	500	500
	Maximum load on roof:	50	50	50
SERVICING AND	Maximum load on ball (trailer with brakes):	60	60	60
MAINTENANCE	(*) If special equipment is fitted (sunroof, tow hitch, etc.	) the unladen car weight increases, thu	us reducing the effective payload with	respect to the maximum permitted

(\*) If special equipment is fitted (sunroof, tow hitch, etc.) the unladen car weight increases, thus reducing the effective payload with respect to the maximum permitted load.

(\*\*) Loads not to be exceeded. The user is responsible for arranging goods in the luggage compartment and/or load platform within the maximum permitted loads.

TECHNICAL **SPECIFICATIONS** 

Versions	1.6 JTD <sub>M</sub>	2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub>	
Weight empty (with all fluids, fuel tank 90% full and without optional equipment):	1310	1320	GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR
Payload including the driver: (*)	505	505	
Maximum permitted loads (**)			
- front axle:	1100	1100	SAFETY
- rear axle:	850	850	_ [
- total:	1815	1825	
Towable loads			
– trailer with brakes:	1300	1300	
– trailer without brakes:	500	500	
Maximum load on roof:	50	50	IN AN EMERGENCY
Maximum load on ball (trailer with brakes):	60	60	

(\*) If special equipment is fitted (sunroof, tow hitch, etc.) the unladen car weight increases, thus reducing the effective payload with respect to the maximum permitted load.

(\*\*) Loads not to be exceeded. The user is responsible for arranging goods in the luggage compartment and/or load platform within the maximum permitted loads.

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

SPECIFICATIONS

TECHNICAL

#### REFUELLING

GETTING TO KNOW		1.4 Turbo Petrol		1.4 Turbo MultiAir		Recommended fuels and		
YOUR CAR		litres	kg	litres	kg	original lubricants		
$\longrightarrow$	Fuel tank	60		60		Unleaded petrol not less than		
SAFETY	including a reserve of	8 - 10		8 - 10		95 RON (ĖN 228 specification)		
	Engine cooling system (with climate control)	5,7	5,0	5,7	5,0	50-50 mixture of demineralised water and PARAFLU <sup>UP</sup> (*)		
$\longrightarrow$	Engine sump	2,75	2,3	3,1	2,6	- SELENIA STAR P.E.		
STARTING AND DRIVING	Engine sump and filter	3,1	2,6	3,5	2,9	- JELEINIA JIAK P.E.		
	Gearbox casing/differential	1,87	1,6	1,87	1,6	TUTELA TRANSMISSION GEARFORCE		
IN AN EMERGENCY	Hydraulic brake circuit with ABS antilock brakes	0,83	0,78	0,83	0,78	TUTELA TOP 4		
	Windscreen/rear window/ headlight washer fluid reservoir (**)	2,8 (4,6)	2,5 (4,1)	2,8 (4,6)	2,5 (4,1)	Mixture of water and TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35		
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE	(*) For particularly harsh climate condition (**) Values in brackets refer to versions wi		and 40% demineralis	ed water is recommen	ded.	•		

(\*) For particularly harsh climate conditions, a mixture of 60% <sup>UP</sup> and 40% demineralised water is recommended. (\*\*) Values in brackets refer to versions with headlight washers

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

	1750 Turbo Petrol		Recommended fuels and original	
	litres	kg	lubricants	GETTING TO KNOW
Fuel tank	60		Unleaded petrol not less than 95 RON	YOUR CAR
including a reserve of	8 - 10		(EN 228 specification)	$\succ$
Engine cooling system (with climate control)	6,4	5,7	50-50 mixture of demineralised water and PARAFLU <sup>UP</sup> (*)	SAFETY
Engine sump	5,0	4,25	- SELENIA SPORT POWER	
Engine sump and filter	5,1	4,35	- Seleinia Sport Power	
Gearbox casing/differential	1,87	1,6	TUTELA TRANSMISSION GEARFORCE	STARTING AND DRIVING
Hydraulic brake circuit with ABS antilock brakes	0,83	0,78	TUTELA TOP 4	
Windscreen/rear window/headlight washer fluid reservoir (**)	2,8 (4,6)	2,5 (4,1)	Mixture of water and TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35	
				IN AN EMERGENCY

(\*) For particularly harsh climate conditions, a mixture of 60% <sup>UP</sup> and 40% demineralised water is recommended. (\*\*) Values in brackets refer to versions with headlight washers

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

		1.6 JTD <sub>M</sub>		2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub>		Recommended fuels and	
GETTING TO KNOW		litres	kg	litres	kg	original lubricants	
YOUR CAR	Fuel tank	60		60	-	Diesel for motor vehicles	
$\longrightarrow$	including a reserve of	8 - 10		8 - 10	-	(EN 590 specification)	
SAFETY	Engine cooling system (with climate control)	6,8	6,0	6,7	5,9	50-50 mixture of demineralised water and PARAFLU <sup>UP</sup> (**)	
	Engine sump	4,0	3,4	4,0	3,4	SELENIA WR P.E.	
	Engine sump and filter	4,2	3,5	4,2	3,5	JELEINIA WK F.E.	
STARTING AND DRIVING	Gearbox casing/differential	1,87	1,6	1,87	1,6	TUTELA TRANSMISSION GEARFORCE	
IN AN EMERGENCY	Hydraulic brake circuit with ABS antilock brakes	0,83	0,78	0,83	0,78	TUTELA TOP 4	
	Windscreen/rear window/ headlight washer fluid reservoir (*)	2,8 (4,6)	2,5 (4,1)	2,8 (4,6)	2,5 (4,1)	Mixture of water and TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35	

(\*\*) For particularly harsh climate conditions, a mixture of 60% <sup>UP</sup> and 40% demineralised water is recommended. (\*) Values in brackets refer to versions with headlight washers

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## **FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS**

Your car is equipped with an engine oil that has been thoroughly developed and tested in order to meet the requirements of the Scheduled Servicing Plan. Constant use of the prescribed lubricants guarantees the fuel consumption and emission specifications. Lubricant quality is crucial for engine operation and duration.

#### **PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS**

Use	Fluid and lubricant features for a correct use of the car	Genuine fluids and lubricants	Replacement interval	SAFETY			
Lubricant for petrol engines (for 1750 Turbo petrol versions only)	SAE 5W-40 grade fully synthetic lubricant, FIAT 9.55535-GH2 - ACEA C3 classification.	SELENIA SPORT POWER Contractual Technical Reference No. F052.H12	According to Scheduled Servicing Plan	STARTING AND DRIVING			
Lubricant for petrol engines (1750 Turbo petrol versions excluded)	SAE 5W-40 grade fully synthetic lubricant, FIAT 9.55535-S2 - ACEA C3 classification.	<b>SELENIA StAR P.E.</b> Contractual Technical Reference no. F603.D08	According to Scheduled Servicing Plan	IN AN EMERGENCY			
Lubricant for diesel engines	SAE 5W-30 grade fully synthetic lubricant, FIAT 9.55535-S1 - ACEA C2 classification.	SELENIA WR P.E. Contractual Technical Reference No. F510.D07	According to Scheduled Servicing Plan	SERVICING AND			
In case of emergency, if lubricants with the prescribed specifications are not available, products with the minimum indicated ACEA performance							

can be used for topping up; in this case optimal performance of the engine is not guaranteed. For MultiAir system engines only use lubricants with **indicated SAE** grade and specifications.



The use of products with different specifications than those indicated above could cause damage to the engine not covered by the warranty.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

**GETTING TO KNOW** 

YOUR CAR

GETTING TO KNOW	Use	Fluid and lubricant features for a correct use of the car	Genuine fluids and lubricants	Applications
YOUR CAR	Lubricants and greases for drive transmission system	SAE 75W grade synthetic lubricant. FIAT Classification 9.55550-MZ6.	TUTELA TRANSMISSION GEARFORCE Contractual Technical Reference No. F002.F10	Gearboxes and differentials (mechanical)
		Molybdenum disulphide grease, for use at high temperatures. NL.G.I. 1-2 consistency FIAT 9.55580 Classification	<b>TUTELA ALL STAR</b> Contractual Technical Reference No. F702.G07	Wheel side constant velocity joints
STARTING AND DRIVING		Grease for constant velocity joints with low friction coefficient. NL.GI. 0-1 consistency FIAT 9.55580 Classification	<b>TUTELA STAR 700</b> Contractual Technical Reference No. F701.C07	Differential side constant velocity joints
IN AN EMERGENCY	Brake fluid	Synthetic fluid for brake and clutch systems. Exceeds specifications: FMVSS no. 116 DOT 4, ISO 4925, SAE J1704. FIAT 9.55597 Classification	<b>TUTELA TOP 4</b> Contractual Technical Reference No. F001.A93	Brake and clutch hydraulic controls
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE				
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS				
INDEX				

Use	Fluid and lubricant features for a correct use of the car	Genuine fluids and lubricants	Applications	GETTING TO KNOW
Protective agent	Red protective agent with antifreeze action, based on inhibited monoethylene glycol with organic formula. Exceeds CUNA NC 956-16, ASTM D 3306	<b>PARAFLU<sup>UP</sup> (*)</b> Contractual Technical	Mixture: 50% water and	YOUR CAR
for radiators	specifications. FIAT 9.55523 Classification	Reference No. F101.M01	50% <b>PARAFLU<sup>UP</sup> (**)</b>	SAFETY
Diesel fuel additive	Antifreeze additive for diesel, with protective action for diesel engines.	TUTELA DIESEL ART Contractual Technical	To be mixed with the diesel	
		Reference No. F601.L06	(25 cc per 10 litres)	
Washer fluid for windscreen/rear window/	Mixture of alcohol, water and surfactants CUNA NC 956-11 FIAT 9.55522 Classification	TUTELA PROFESSIONAL SC 35 Contractual Technical	To be used diluted or undiluted in windscreen/rear window washer/wiper	STARTING AND DRIVING
headlamps	TIAL 7.55522 Classification	Reference No. F201.D02	systems	
(*)IMPORTANT Do not use fluids with different specifications for topping up or mixing.				IN AN EMERGENCY

(\*\*)For particularly harsh climate conditions, a mixture of 60% **PARAFLU<sup>UP</sup>** and 40% distilled water is recommended.

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

## **FUEL CONSUMPTION**

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR The fuel consumption figures given in the table below are determined on the basis of the type-approval tests laid down by specific European Directives.

The procedures below are followed for measuring consumption:

 $\square$  urban cycle: cold starting followed by driving that simulates urban use of the car;

extra-urban cycle: frequent accelerating in all gears, simulating extra-urban use of the car: speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h;
 combined fuel consumption: calculated with a weighting of approximately 37% of the urban cycle and 63% of the extra-urban cycle.

IMPORTANT The type of route, traffic conditions, weather conditions, driving style, general condition of the car, trim level/equipment/accessories, use of the climate control, car load, presence of roof racks and other situations that adversely affect the aerodynamics or wind resistance lead to different fuel consumption figures than those measured.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION ACCORDING TO THE CURRENT EUROPEAN DIRECTIVE (litres/100 km)

Versions	Urban	Extra-urban	Combined
1.4 Turbo Petrol	8,4	5,3	6,4
1.4 Turbo MultiAir	7,6	4,6	5,7
1750 Turbo Petrol	10,8	5,8	7,6
1.6 JTD <sub>M</sub>	5,4	3,6	4,3
2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub> 136 HP	5,6	3,9	4,5
2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub> 140 HP	5,6	3,9	4,5
2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub> 163/170 HP	5,8	4,1	4,7

INDEX

SAFETY

STARTING AND

IN AN EMERGEN

SERVICING A

TECHNIC SPECIFICATIO

DRIVING

## **CO<sub>2</sub> EMISSIONS**

The CO<sub>2</sub> emission levels given in the following tables refer to combined consumption.

Versions	CO <sub>2</sub> emissions according to the current European directive (g/km)	YOUR CAR
1.4 Turbo Petrol	149	
1.4 Turbo MultiAir	132	SAFETY
1750 Turbo Petrol	177	JAILII
1.6 JTD <sub>M</sub>	112	
2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub> 136 HP	119	STARTING AND
2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub> 163 HP/170 HP	124	DRIVING
2.0 JTD <sub>M</sub> 140 HP	119	

IN AN EMERGENCY

**GETTING TO KNOW** 

SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

GETTING TO KNOW	PRESCRIPTIONS FOR HANDLING THE VEHICLE AT THE END OF ITS LIFE
YOUR CAR	For years, Alfa Romeo has pursued a global commitment to protect and respect the environment by continually improving its production processes and developing increasingly eco-compatible products. To ensure its customers the best possible service in compliance with environmental standards and in response to obligations arising out of European Directive 2000/53/EC on end of life vehicles, Alfa Romeo offers its customers the chance to hand back their vehicles (*) at the end of their life cycle at no additional cost.
SAFETY	The European Directive sets out that when the vehicle is handed over the last keeper or owner should not incur any expenses as a result of it
	having a zero or negative market value. In particular, in almost all European Union countries, until 1st January 2007, vehicles registered after 1st July 2002 will be collected free of charge, whilst from 2007 collection will be free of charge irrespective of the year of registration as long as the vehicle contains its basic components (in particular, the engine and bodywork) and has no additional waste.
STARTING AND DRIVING	To hand your vehicle over at the end of its life without extra cost, contact one of our dealerships or an Alfa Romeo authorised collection and scrapping centre. These centres have been carefully chosen to offer high-quality service for the collection, treatment and recycling of vehicles at their end of life, respecting the surrounding environment.
$\longrightarrow$	You can find further information on these collection and scrapping centres either from an Alfa Romeo Dealership or by calling the freephone number 00800 2532 0000 or on the Alfa Romeo website.
IN AN EMERGENCY	(*) Vehicle for transporting passengers with a maximum of nine seats and a total permitted weight of 3.5 t
$\longrightarrow$	
Servicing and Maintenance	
TECHNICAL	
SPECIFICATIONS	
INDEX	
232	

## DASHBOARD

The presence and position of controls, instruments and gauges may vary according to different versions.

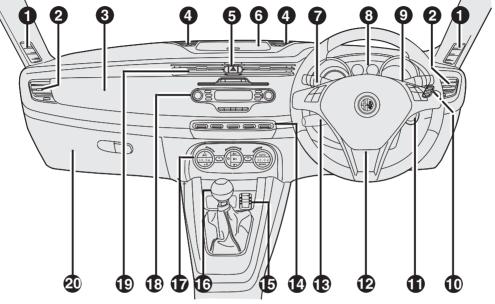


fig. 1

A0K0225

1. Fixed vent for sending air to side windows – 2. Adjustable air vent – 3. Passenger front air bag – 4. Upper adjustable vents – 5. Hazard warning lights – 6. Radio navigator display (for versions/markets, where provided) – 7. External light control stalk – 8. Instrument panel – 9. Windscreen wiper/rear window wiper/trip computer stalk – 10. Headlight alignment corrector (for versions/markets, where provided) and Setup Menu access buttons – 11. Ignition device – 12. Driver's front air bag – 13. Cruise Control stalk (for versions/markets, where provided) – 14. Control buttons: fog lights/rear fog light, Start&Stop system (for versions/markets, where provided), door locking/unlocking, AFS light on/off (for versions/markets, where provided) – 15. "Alfa DNA" system – 16. Gear lever – 17. Heating/ventilation/air conditioning controls – 18. Sound system (for versions/markets, where provided) – 19. Central adjustable air vents – 20. Glove compartment.

## **CONTROL PANEL AND INSTRUMENTS**

#### VERSIONS WITH MULTIFUNCTIONAL DISPLAY

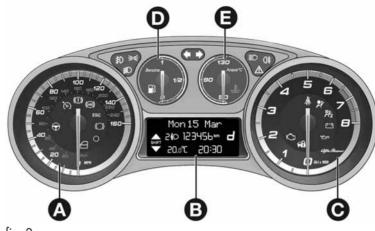


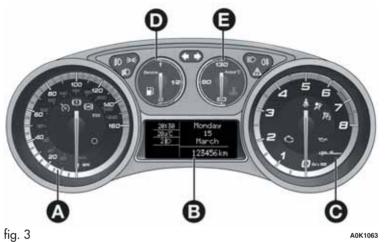
fig. 2

A0K1062

A. Speedometer (speed indicator) B. Multifunctional display C. Rev counter D. Fuel level gauge with reserve warning light E. Engine coolant temperature gauge and excessive temperature warning light

The Warning lights supplied in diesel versions only. On diesel versions the rpm gauge end of scale is set at 6000 rpm WARNING Instrument background colour and type may vary according to the version.

#### VERSIONS WITH RECONFIGURABLE MULTIFUNCTIONAL DISPLAY



A. Speedometer (speed indicator) B. Reconfigurable multifunctional display C. Rev counter D. Fuel level gauge with reserve warning light E. Engine coolant temperature gauge and excessive temperature warning light

The Warning lights supplied in diesel versions only. On diesel versions the rpm gauge end of scale is set at 6000 rpm WARNING Instrument background colour and type may vary according to the version.

## **CHANGING A FUSE**

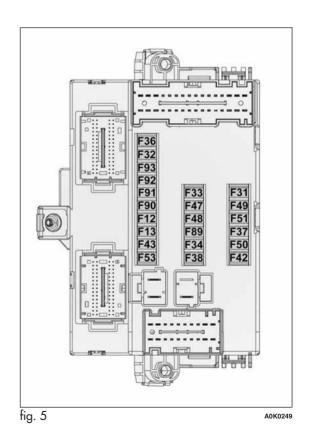
#### FUSEBOX ON DASHBOARD

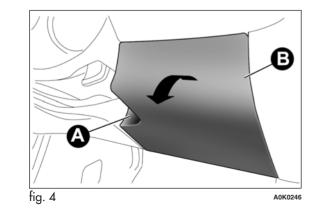
Insert a hand in the seat A fig. 4 and lower the flap B to access the fuses.

The fuses are located in the fusebox shown in fig. 5.

Note

For fuse protected devices refer to the description of "In an emergency" chapter.







#### S O U N D S Y S T E M

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION ADVICE TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS BASIC LEVEL SYSTEM MEDIUM LEVEL SYSTEM BOSE HI-FI LEVEL SYSTEM	241 242 243 243 243
QUICK GUIDE GENERAL FUNCTIONS RADIO FUNCTIONS CD FUNCTIONS Media Player FUNCTIONS (only with <b>Blue&amp;Me™</b> )	246 246 246
STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS	
GENERAL INFORMATION	248
FUNCTIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS SWITCHING ON THE RADIO SWITCHING OFF THE RADIO SELECTING THE RADIO FUNCTIONS	250 250 250
SELECTING CD FUNCTION	250
AUDIO SOURCE MEMORY FUNCTION	
MUTE/PAUSE FUNCTION (zeroing the volume)	251
AUDIO SETTINGS	251
TONE ADJUSTMENT (bass/treble)	
BALANCE ADJUSTMENT	
LOUDNESS FUNCTION	
USER EQ SETTINGS FUNCTION	253
MENU	
AF SWITCHING function	254

TRAFFIC INFORMATION function       REGIONAL MODE function         MP3 DISPLAY function       RADIO ON VOLUME function         RADIO ON VOLUME function       RADIO ON Function         AUX OFFSET function       RADIO OFF function         SYSTEM RESET function       PHONE FUNCTION         ANTI-THEFT PROTECTION       RADIO (TUNER)	256 257 257 257 258 258 258 258 259 259
INTRODUCTION INTRODUCTION FREQUENCY BAND SELECTION PRESET BUTTONS STORING THE LAST STATION LISTENED TO. AUTOMATIC TUNING MANUAL TUNING AUTOSTORE FUNCTION EMERGENCY ALARM RECEPTION EON FUNCTION (Enhanced Other Network). STEREOPHONIC BROADCASTERS.	261 261 262 262 262 262 262 263 263
CD PLAYER	264 265 265 265 266 266 266
MP3 CD PLAYER	267

# SOUND-SYSTEM

INTRODUCTION	
MP3 MODE	
SELECTING MP3 SESSIONS ON HYBRID DISCS	
DISPLAY INFORMATION	
SELECTING NEXT/PREVIOUS FOLDER	
STRUCTURE OF THE FOLDERS	

AUX (only with the <b>Blue&amp;Me</b> <sup>™</sup> system) INTRODUCTION	270
AUX MODE	270
TROUBLESHOOTING	
GENERAL	
CD PLAYER	
MP3 FILE READING	

## INTRODUCTION

The radio has been designed according to the passenger compartment's specific characteristics and with a personalised design that complements the style of the dashboard.

The instructions for use are given below. We recommend that you read them carefully.

## **ADVICE**

#### **Road safety**

Familiarise yourself with the various car radio functions (e.g. storing radio stations), before starting to drive.

#### **Reception conditions**

Reception conditions change constantly while driving. Reception may be interfered with by the presence of mountains, buildings or bridges, or when you are far away from the broadcaster.

**Note** The volume may be increased when receiving traffic alerts and news.



If the volume is too loud this could be dangerous for the driver and for passengers when driving in traffic. Always adjust the volume so that you can still hear background noises.

#### Maintenance and care

Only clean the cover with a soft, anti-static cloth. Cleaning and polishing products may damage the surface.

## CD

Dirt, scratches or any distortions on CDs may cause skipping during playback and poor sound quality. Follow these tips for optimum playback conditions:

□ only use CDs with the following mark:



- □ clean every CD thoroughly removing any fingerprints or dust using a soft cloth. Hold CDs by the circumference and clean them from the centre towards the edge;
- □ never use chemical products (e.g. antistatic or thinner spray cans) for cleaning as they could damage the surface of the CDs;
- 🗆 after listening to them place CDs back in their cases to avoid them being damaged;
- do not expose CDs to direct sunlight, high temperatures or moisture for long periods;
- □ do not stick labels on the surface of the CD and do not write on the recorded surface using pens or pencils;

- Never use CDs that are very scratched, cracked, distorted, etc. Their use could cause damage to the player or make it malfunction;
- □ to achieve the best quality audio reproduction we recommend the use of original CD media. Correct operation is not guaranteed when CD-R/RW media are used that were not correctly burnt and/or with a maximum capacity above 650 Mb;
- do not use commercially available protective sheets for CDs or discs with stabilisers as they could get stuck in the internal mechanism and damage the disc;
- □ if a copy-protected CD is used, it may take a few seconds before the system starts to play it. The CD player is not guaranteed to play all copy-protected discs. The presence of copy protection is often indicated in small letters or may be difficult to read on the cover of the CD; it may say something like, for example, "COPY CONTROL", "COPY PROTECTED", "THIS CD CANNOT BE PLAYED ON A PC/MAC" or may be identified through the use of symbols, such as, for example:



□ The CD player is able to read most of the compression systems currently on the market (e.g.:LAME, BLADE, XING, FRAUNHOFER) but as these systems are continually evolving, playback of all compression formats is not guaranteed.

#### **TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS**

Maximum power: 4x30 W

#### **BASIC LEVEL SYSTEM**

#### Standard level audio

Front speakers □ 2 × tweeters, Ø 38 mm; □ 2 × mid-woofer speakers, Ø 165 mm. Rear speakers □ 2 × full-range speakers, Ø 165 mm.

## MEDIUM LEVEL SYSTEM

#### Medium level audio

Front speakers □ 2 × tweeters, Ø 38 mm; □ 2 × mid-woofer speakers, Ø 165 mm. Rear speakers □ 2 × tweeters, Ø 38 mm; □ 2 × mid-woofer speakers, Ø 165 mm. High level radio (dual tuner and dual aerial).

#### **BOSE HI-FI LEVEL SYSTEM**

(for versions/markets, where provided)

#### HI-FI level audio

Front speakers

 $\Box$  2 × tweeters, Ø 38 mm;

 $\Box$  2 × mid-woofer speakers, Ø 165 mm;

 $\square$  1  $\times$  mid-tweeter (Centerfill) speaker fitted in the dashboard.

Rear speakers

 $\Box$  2 × tweeters, Ø 38 mm;

 $\Box$  2 x mid-woofer speakers, Ø 165 mm;

 $\Box$  1 × 8-channel amplifier;

□ 1 × bass box.

High level radio (dual tuner and dual aerial).

The Bose HI-FI audio system has been carefully designed to provide the best acoustic performance and reproduce sound like a live concert in all areas of the passenger compartment.

The system faithfully reproduces crystalline treble tones and provides full and rich bass tones that make the loudness function superfluous.

The complete range of sound is reproduced throughout the entire passenger compartment so that the occupants are enveloped with the feeling of space experienced when listening to live music.

The components used have been patented and make use of the most sophisticated technology whilst at the same time being easy to use by even the most inexperienced people.



#### **GENERAL FUNCTIONS**

Button	Functions	Mode
<b></b>	Switching on	Brief button press
0	Switching off	Brief button press
<b>A</b> fig. 1	Volume adjustment	Left/right rotation of left knob
FM AS	Selection of radio source FM1, FM2, FM Autostore	Brief cyclical button press
AM	Selection of radio source MW	Brief cyclical button press
MEDIA	CD/Media Player (only with <b>Blue&amp;Me<sup>™</sup></b> ) / AUX (only with <b>Blue&amp;Me<sup>™</sup></b> , for versions/markets, where provided) source selection	Brief cyclical button press
MUTE	Volume activation/deactivation (MUTE/PAUSE)	Brief button press
<b>.</b> .	Audio adjustments: low tones (BASS), high tones (TREBLE), RH/LH balance (BALANCE), front/rear balance (FADER)	Menu activation: brief button press Selection of adjustment type: pressing buttons △ or▽ Adjustment of values: pressing buttons ⊲ or⊳
MENU	Advanced functions adjustment	Menu activation: brief button press Selection of adjustment type: pressing buttons △ or▽ Adjustment of values: pressing buttons ⊲ or⊳

SOUND-SYSTEM

#### **RADIO FUNCTIONS**

Button	Functions	Mode
	Radio station search: - Automatic search - Manual search	Automatic search: press buttons ⊲ or ⊳ (hold down for fast forward) Manual search: press buttons △ or ▽ (hold down for fast forward)
123456	Store current radio station	Long button press for memory preset 1 to 6 respectively
123450	Stored station recall	Brief button press for memory preset 1 to 6 respectively

#### **CD FUNCTIONS**

Button	Functions	Mode
	CD ejection	Brief button press
	Play previous/next track	Pressing ⊲ or ⊳ buttons briefly
	CD track fast forward/rewind	Pressing ⊲ or ⊳ buttons briefly
$\Delta \nabla$	Playing previous/next folder (for CD-MP3)	Pressing $ riangle$ or $ riangle$ buttons briefly

#### Media Player FUNCTIONS (only with Blue&Me<sup>™</sup>)

Button	Functions	Mode
$\bigtriangleup \nabla$	Select previous/next folder/artist/genre/album depending on the active selection mode	Brief button press
$\triangleleft \triangleright$	Play previous/next track	Brief button press

## **STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS**

(for versions/markets, where provided)

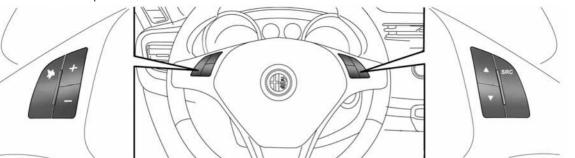


fig. 2

A0K0118

lig. 2		
Button	Functions	Mode
¥	AudioMute on/off (Radio mode) or Pause function in MP3 or Media Player mode (only with <b>Blue&amp;Me</b> <sup>TM</sup> )	Brief button press
+	Volume increase	Button press
-	Volume decrease	Button press
SRC	Selection of Radio frequency range (FM1, FM2, FMT, FMA, MW) and audio sources: Radio, MP3 or Media Player (only with <b>Blue&amp;Me™</b> ) /AUX (only with <b>Blue&amp;Me</b> <sup>TM</sup> ) (for versions/markets, where provided)	Button press
	Radio: recall stored stations (from 1 to 6) CD/CD MP3: select next track	Button press
▼	Radio: recall stored stations (from 6 to 1) CD/CD MP3: select previous track	Button press

**NOTE** Starting from the FM or AM source set on the radio (e.g. FM1 or MW1), if you cycle through the audio sources using the SRC button among the steering wheel controls (stopping on a source other than radio) when the radio source is selected (FM or AM) using the buttons on the radio panel, the radio always switches to the last radio source (FMA or MW2).

SOUND-SYSTEM

## **GENERAL INFORMATION**

The radio offers the following functions:

### **Radio** section

- □ PLL tuning with FM/AM/MW frequency bands;
- RDS (Radio Data System) with TA (traffic alerts) function TP (traffic programmes) - EON (Enhanced Other Network) - REG (regional programmes);
- $\square$  AF: search selection for alternative frequencies in RDS mode;
- □ provision for emergency alarm;
- 🗆 automatic/manual tuning of stations;
- □ FM Multipath detector;
- manual storing of 30 stations: 18 on FM band (6 on FM1, 6 on FM2, 6 on FMT), 12 on MW band (6 on MW1, 6 on MW2);
- automatic memorization (AUTOSTORE function) of 6 stations in the dedicated FM band;
- SPEED VOLUME function (excluding versions with Bose Hi-Fi system): speed-dependent automatic volume adjustment;
- $\Box$  automatic Stereo/Mono selection.

## **CD** section

- $\Box$  Direct selection of the disc;
- □ Track selection (forward/back);
- □ Fast advance (forward/back) through tracks;
- CD Display function: display of disc name and time elapsed since the start of the track;
- $\square$  Playing of audio CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Multimedia CDs include data tracks in addition to the audio tracks. Playing this type of CD can cause hissing at a volume that may jeopardise road safety as well as causing damage to the final stages and the speakers.

## MP3 CD section

□ MP3-Info function (ID3-TAG);

□ Folder selection (previous/next);

□ Track selection (forward/back);

- □ Fast advance (forward/back) through tracks;
- MP3 Display function: display of name of folder, ID3-TAG information, time elapsed since the start of the track, name of the file);

□ Playing of audio or data CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

# Audio section

□ Mute/Pause function;

□ Soft-Mute function:

□ Loudness function (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system);

□ 7-band graphic equaliser (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system);

□ Separate bass/treble adjustment;

□ Right/left channel balance.

# Media Player section (only with Blue&Me<sup>™</sup>)

For the Media Player functions see the **Blue&Me™** supplement.

# AUX section (only with Blue&Me<sup>™</sup>) (for versions/markets, where provided)

□ AUX source selection:

□ AUX Offset function: alignment of the portable device volume with that of the other sources;

□ Portable player playback.

# FUNCTIONS AND ADJUSTMENTS

## **SWITCHING ON THE RADIO**

The radio switches on when the  ${\ensuremath{\textcircled{}}}$  button (ON/OFF) is pressed briefly.

When the radio is turned on, the volume is limited to level 20 if it was set to a higher value when previously used or to level 5 if it was previously set to value 0 or to Mute/Pause. The previously set value is maintained in all other cases.

When the radio is switched on with the key extracted from the ignition, it switches off automatically after about 20 minutes. After the radio has switched itself off automatically it can be switched on for a further 20 minutes by pressing the  $\bigcirc$  button (ON/OFF).

# SWITCHING OFF THE RADIO

Briefly press the 🔿 button (ON/OFF).

# **SELECTING THE RADIO FUNCTIONS**

By pressing the FM AS button quickly and repeatedly, the following audio sources can be selected cyclically:

□ TUNER ("FM1", "FM2", "FMA").

By pressing the AM button briefly and repeatedly, the following audio sources can be selected cyclically:

□ TUNER ("MW1", "MW2").

# **SELECTING CD FUNCTION**

By pressing the MEDIA button briefly it is possible to select the CD function.

# **AUDIO SOURCE MEMORY FUNCTION**

If another function (e.g. the radio) is selected whilst listening to a CD, playback is interrupted and is resumed from the same point when returning to the CD source.

If another function is selected whilst listening to the radio, the last station selected is tuned into when returning to Radio mode.

# **VOLUME ADJUSTMENT**

To adjust the volume, turn the left knob  $\boldsymbol{\mathsf{A}}$  (fig. 1).

If the volume level is changed during the transmission of traffic news, the new setting will only be maintained until the update is finished.

# SOUND-SYSTEM

# MUTE/PAUSE FUNCTION (zeroing the volume)

Press the MUTE button briefly to activate the MUTE function. The volume will gradually decrease and the words "RADIO Mute" (in radio mode) or "PAUSE" (in CD mode) will be displayed.

Press the Mute button again to deactivate the MUTE function. The volume will gradually increase until it reaches the level set previously.

When the volume level is changed using the dedicated controls, the Mute function is deactivated and the volume is adjusted to the new level selected.

With the Mute function activated, it will be ignored when there is an incoming traffic alert (if the TA function is activated), or if an emergency alarm is received. The function will be reactivated when the alert is over.

# AUDIO SETTINGS

The functions in the audio menu differ according to the active source: AM/FM/CD/Media Player (only with **Blue&Me**<sup>TM</sup>) /AUX (only with **Blue&Me**<sup>TM</sup>) (for versions/markets, where provided).

Press the **J** button briefly to change the Audio functions.

After the r button is first pressed, the display will show the bass level value for the source activated at that time (e.g. in FM mode the display will show the wording "FM Bass + 2").

Use the  $\triangle$  or  $\bigtriangledown$  buttons to scroll through the menu functions. To change the setting of the function selected use the  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  buttons. The current status of the function selected will be shown on the display.

The functions managed by the Menu are:

□ BASS (adjustment of bass tones);

□ TREBLE (adjustment of high tones);

□ BALANCE (right/left balance adjustment);

□ FADER (front/back balance adjustment);

- □ LOUDNESS (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system) (activation/deactivation of LOUDNESS function);
- EQUALIZER (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system) (activation and selection of factory equalizer settings);
- USER EQUALISER (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system) (personalised equaliser settings).

# TONE ADJUSTMENT (bass/treble)

Proceed as follows:

- $\Box$  Use  $\bigtriangleup$  or  $\bigtriangledown$  buttons to set the "Bass" or "Treble" in the AUDIO menu;
- $\Box$  press the  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  button to increase/decrease the bass or treble.

By pressing the buttons briefly, the levels will change progressively in steps. By pressing them for longer, the levels will change quickly.

# **BALANCE ADJUSTMENT**

Proceed as follows:

- $\Box$  Select the "Balance" setting in the AUDIO menu using the  $\bigtriangleup$  or  $\bigtriangledown$  button;
- $\Box$  press the  $\triangleleft$  button to increase the volume of the right speakers or the  $\triangleright$  button to increase the volume of the left speakers.

By pressing the buttons briefly, the levels will change progressively in steps. By pressing them for longer, the levels will change quickly. Select the value " $\triangleleft 0 \triangleright$ " to set the same level for the right and left audio outputs.

# FADER ADJUSTMENT

Proceed as follows:

- $\Box$  Select the "Fader" setting in the AUDIO menu using the  $\bigtriangleup$  or  $\bigtriangledown$  button;
- $\Box$  press the  $\triangleleft$  button to increase the sound from the rear speakers or the  $\triangleright$  button to increase the sound from the front speakers.

By pressing the buttons briefly, the levels will change progressively in steps. By pressing them for longer, the levels will change quickly. Select the value " $\triangleleft 0 \triangleright$ " to set the same level for the front and rear audio outputs.

## LOUDNESS FUNCTION (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system)

The Loudness function improves the volume of the sound whilst listening at low volumes, increasing the bass and treble.

To activate/deactivate the function, select the Loudness setting of the AUDIO menu using the  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  buttons.

The condition of the function (on or off) is shown on the display for a few seconds by the wording "Loudness On" or "Loudness Off".

#### EQ FUNCTION (equaliser activation/deactivation) (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system)

The built-in equaliser can be activated/deactivated. When the equaliser function is off, the audio settings can only be changed by adjusting the "Bass" and "Treble" settings, whereas when the function is on, the acoustic curves can be adjusted.

To deactivate the equaliser, select the "EQ OFF" function using the  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  buttons.

To activate the equaliser, use the  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  buttons to select one of the adjustments:

□ "FM/AM/CD...EQ User" (adjustment of 7 equaliser bands that can be changed by the user);

□ "Classic" (equaliser preset for optimal classical music sound);

"Rock" (equaliser preset for optimal rock and pop music sound);

"Jazz" (equaliser preset for optimal jazz music sound).

When one of the equaliser settings is activated the letters  $^{\prime\prime}\mathrm{EQ}^{\prime\prime}$  light up.

## **USER EQ SETTINGS FUNCTION** (equaliser settings only if the USER setting is selected) (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system)

To set a customised equaliser adjustment, set to "User" using the  $\bigtriangleup$  or  $\bigtriangledown$  buttons and press the MENU button.

A 7-bar graph appears on the display, in which each bar represents a frequency.

Select the bar to adjust using the  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  buttons; the selected bar will start to flash and it can be adjusted using the  $\triangle$  or  $\bigtriangledown$  buttons.

To store the setting, press the **J** button again. The display will show the active source at that time followed by the word "USER". If the mode is "FM", for example, the display will show the text "FM EQ User".

# MENU

## **MENU** button functions

Press the MENU button briefly to activate the Menu function. The display will show the first menu item that can be adjusted (AF) ("AF Switching On" on the display).

Use the  $\triangle$  or  $\bigtriangledown$  buttons to scroll through the menu functions. To change the setting of the function selected use the  $\lhd$  or  $\triangleright$  buttons.

The current status of the function selected will be shown on the display.

The functions managed by the Menu are:

□ AF SWITCHING (ON/OFF);

□ TRAFFIC INFORMATION (ON/OFF);

□ REGIONAL MODE regional programmes (ON/OFF);

□ MP3 DISPLAY (CD MP3 display settings);

- SPEED VOLUME (speed dependent automatic volume adjustment) (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system);
- RADIO ON VOLUME (radio volume limit activation/deactivation);
- □ AUX OFFSET (alignment of the portable device volume to that of the other sources) (for versions/markets, where provided);

□ RADIO OFF (switching-off mode);

□ SYSTEM RESET

Press the MENU button again to exit the Menu function.

**Note** The AF SWITCHING, TRAFFIC INFORMATION and REGIONAL MODE adjustments are only possible in FM mode.

## AF SWITCHING function (alternative frequency search)

The radio can operate in two different modes using RDS:

□ "AF Switching On": search for alternative frequencies active (the letters "AF" appear on the display);

□ "AF Switching Off": search for alternative frequencies not active. Proceed as follows to activate/deactivate the function:

□ press the MENU button and select "AF Switching On";

When the function is activated, the radio automatically tunes into the station with the strongest signal broadcasting the same programme. While driving, the same station can be continuously listened to without having to change the frequency when you change zones.

Obviously, it must be possible to receive the station that you are listening to in the area you are driving through.

If the AF function has been activated, "AF" will light up in the display.

If the AF function has been activated and the radio is not able to receive the current station, the radio activates the automatic search, during which "FM Search" appears on the display (only for top-ofthe-range radios).

With the AF function deactivated, the remaining RDS functions, such as the display of the station name, still remain active.

The AF function can only be activated on FM bands.

# **TRAFFIC INFORMATION function** (traffic information)

Some stations on the FM band (FM1, FM2 and FMA) can broadcast information about traffic conditions. In this case the letters "TA" appear on the display.

Proceed as follows to switch the TA function on/off:

□ press the MENU button briefly and select "Traffic info";

 $\Box$  press the  $\lhd/\triangleright$  buttons to activate/deactivate the function. If the TA function has been activated, the "TA" icon lights up on the display.

**Note** If the TA function is activated with an audio source other than Tuner (Radio) (CD, MP3, telephone or Mute/Pause), the radio can carry out an automatic search and therefore it is possible, when reactivating the Tuner (Radio) source, that the frequency tuned into is different from the one previously set.

With the TA function, it is possible to:

- □ search only for RDS stations that broadcast in FM and are enabled to broadcast traffic information;
- □ receive traffic information even when the CD player is in operation;
- $\square$  receive traffic information at a minimum preset volume even with the radio volume off.

**Note** In some countries there are radio stations that, even with the TP function activated, do not transmit traffic information (the "TP" icon appears on the display).

If the radio is tuned to a station in the AM band, when TA is activated it will tune into the last selected station in the FM1 band.

The volume at which the traffic news is transmitted depends on the listening volume:

□ listening volume below 5: traffic news volume 5 (fixed value);

□ listening volume above 5: traffic news volume equal to listening volume +1.

If the volume is changed during traffic news, the level will not be shown on the display; the new level will only be maintained during the news.

While traffic information is being received, "TRAFFIC INFORMATION" will appear on the display.

The TA function can be interrupted by pressing any button on the radio.

## **REGIONAL MODE function** (regional transmission reception)

Some national broadcasters will transmit regional programmes at certain times of the day (that vary from region to region).

This function makes it possible to tune into local (regional) broadcasters automatically (see "EON function" paragraph).

If you want the radio to automatically tune into the regional stations being broadcast on the selected network, the function must be activated.

To activate/deactivate the function use the  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  buttons.

The current status of the function appears on the display:

□ "Regional On": function activated;

□ "Regional Off": function deactivated.

If the function is deactivated and you have tuned into a regional station working in a given area and you enter a different area, then the regional station received in the new area will be broadcast.

**Note** If the AF and REG functions are on at the same time, once a border between two regions is crossed, the radio may not switch correctly to a valid alternative frequency.

## MP3 DISPLAY function (MP3 CD data display)

This function makes it possible to select the information shown by the display when listening to a CD containing MP3 tracks.

The function can only be selected if an MP3 CD is inserted: in this case "MP3 Display" will appear on the display.

To change the function, use the  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  buttons.

The following settings are available:

 $\square$  "Title" (track title, if the ID3-TAG is available);

□ "Author" (track author, if the ID3-TAG is available);

□ "Album" (track album, if the ID3-TAG is available);

□ "Folder" name (name assigned to the folder);

 $\square$  "File" name (name assigned to the MP3 file).

## SPEED VOLUME function (speed-based volume change) (excluding versions with Bose HI-FI system)

This function automatically adapts the volume level to the speed of the car, increasing the volume when the speed increases to maintain the ratio with the noise level inside the passenger compartment.

To turn the function on/off, press the  $\lhd$  /  $\triangleright$  buttons. The words "Speed volume" appear on the display, followed by the current status of the function:

 $\square\operatorname{Off:}$  function deactivated

□ Low: function activated (low sensitivity)

□ High: function activated (high sensitivity).

## **RADIO ON VOLUME function** (radio volume limit activation/deactivation)

This function makes it possible to activate/deactivate the volume limits when the radio is turned on.

The display shows the function status:

□ "Radio on vol – Limit on": when the radio is switched on the volume level will be:

- if the volume level is equal to or higher than the maximum value, the radio will switch on at the maximum volume;

- if the volume level is between the minimum and maximum values, the radio will switch on at the same volume as before it was switched off.

□ "Radio on vol – Limit off": the radio will switch on at the volume level it was at before switching off. The volume may be between 0 and 40. To change the setting of the selected function, use the  $<\!\!\!/\!\!>$  buttons.

# NOTES

- Using the Menu it is only possible to adjust the activation/deactivation of the function and not the minimum or maximum volume value.
- □ If the "TA" or "TEL" functions or an external audio source are activated when the radio is turned on, the radio will switch on at the volume set for these sources. When the external audio source is deactivated, the volume can be adjusted between the minimum and maximum levels.
- □ If the battery charge is low, it will not be possible to adjust the volume between the minimum and maximum levels.

## **AUX OFFSET function** (alignment of the portable device volume with that of the other sources)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

This function enables the alignment of the volume of the AUX source, depending on its own portable player, with that of the other sources.

To activate the function, press the MENU button and select "AUX offset".

Press the  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  buttons to decrease or increase the volume value (set from - 6 to + 6).

# **RADIO OFF function** (on and off mode)

This function is used to set the radio switching-off mode to one of two different settings.

To activate the function, use the  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  button.

The selected mode will appear on the display:

- □ "00 MIN": the radio switches off automatically in connection with the ignition key; the radio switches off automatically as soon as the key is turned to STOP position;
- □ "20 MIN": the radio switches off independently of the ignition key; the radio remains switched on for a maximum period of 20 minutes after the key has been turned to STOP position.

# **SYSTEM RESET function**

This function is used to restore all settings to the factory values.

The options are:

□ NO: no restore intervention;

□ YES: the default parameters will be restored. During this operation, the word "Resetting" appears on the display. At the end of the operation, the source does not change and the previous situation will be displayed.

### PHONE FUNCTION (telephone volume adjustment) (only with Blue&Me<sup>™</sup> system)

When a phone call is received, the audio passes to the car's audio system through the radio.

The telephone audio always arrives at a preset volume, but it is possible to adjust it during a conversation using the left knob **A** (fig. 1).

If, while using the **Blue&Me**<sup>™</sup>, the phone call volume is changed, it is shown on the radio display, memorised and kept for all following phone calls until the engine is switched off.

With the RADIO ON VOLUME function active, when the engine is started again:

- □ if the radio was switched off with a **Blue&Me**<sup>™</sup> volume lower than 12, the **Blue&Me**<sup>™</sup> volume will be set to 12 automatically for the next phone call;
- □ if the radio was switched off with a **Blue&Me**<sup>™</sup> volume higher than 25, the **Blue&Me**<sup>™</sup> volume will be set to 25 automatically for the next phone call;
- □ if the radio was switched off with a **Blue&Me**<sup>™</sup> volume between 12 and 25, the **Blue&Me**<sup>™</sup> volume for the next phone call will be that set previously by the user.

If, on the other hand, the RADIO ON VOLUME function is deactivated, the radio keeps the last setting.

# ANTI-THEFT PROTECTION

The radio is equipped with an anti-theft protection system based on the exchange of information between the radio and the electronic control unit (Body Computer) on the car.

This system guarantees maximum safety and avoids the entry of the secret code each time the radio power supply is disconnected. If the check has a positive outcome, the radio will start to function, whereas if the comparison codes are not the same or if the electronic control unit (Body Computer) is replaced, the device will ask the user to enter the secret code according to the procedure described in the paragraph below.

# Entering the secret code

When the radio is switched on, if the code is requested, the display will show "Radio code" for about 2 seconds followed by four dashes "- - - -".

The code is made up of four numbers from 1 to 6, each corresponding to one of the dashes.

To enter the first digit of the code, press the corresponding button of the pre-selected stations (from 1 to 6). Enter the other code numbers in the same way.

If the four digits are not entered within 20 seconds, the display will show "Enter code - - - -". If this occurs, it is not considered an incorrect code entry.

After entering the fourth digit (within 20 seconds), the radio will start to operate.

If an incorrect code is entered, the radio will emit a sound and the display shows the text "Radio blocked/wait" to notify the user of the need to enter the correct code.

Each time the user enters an incorrect code, the waiting time will gradually increase (1 min, 2 min, 4 min, 8 min, 16 min, 30 min, 1 h, 2 h, 4 h, 8 h, 16 h, 24 h) up to a maximum of 24 hours.

The waiting time will be shown on the display with the text "Radio blocked/wait". After the text has disappeared it is possible to start the code entry procedure again.

## Car radio passport

This document certifies ownership of the radio. The car radio passport shows the radio model, serial number and secret code.

**Note** Keep this car radio passport in a safe place so that you can give the information to the relevant authorities if the car radio is stolen.

In case of loss of the car radio passport, contact the Alfa Romeo Authorised Services, taking an ID document and the car ownership documents.

# RADIO (TUNER)

# INTRODUCTION

When the radio is switched on, the last function selected before it was switched off is activated: Radio, CD, CD MP3 or Media Player (only with **Blue&Me**<sup>TM</sup>) or AUX (only with **Blue&Me**<sup>TM</sup>) (for versions/markets, where provided).

To select the Radio function when another audio source is being listened to, briefly press the FM AS or AM buttons depending on the desired band.

Once the Radio mode has been activated, the display will show the name (RDS stations only) and the frequency of the selected radio station, the frequency band selected (e.g. FM1) and the preselect button number (e.g. P1).

# FREQUENCY BAND SELECTION

With the Radio mode active, press the FM AS or AM button briefly and repeatedly to select the desired reception band.

Each time the button is pressed the following bands are selected cyclically:

□ By pressing the FM AS button: "FM1", "FM2" or "FMA";

□ By pressing the AM button: "MW1, MW2".

Each band is highlighted by the name in the display. The last station selected on the respective frequency band will be tuned into.

The FM band is divided into sections: FM1, FM2 or "FMA"; the FMA reception band is reserved for broadcasters stored automatically using the AutoSTore function.

# PRESET BUTTONS

The buttons numbered from 1 to 6 are used to set the following preset stations:

- □ 18 in the FM band (6 in FM1, 6 in FM2, 6 in FMT or "FMA" (on some versions));
- $\square$  12 in the MW band (6 in MW1, 6 in MW2).

To listen to a preset station, select the desired frequency band and then briefly press the corresponding preset button (from 1 to 6).

By pressing the preset button for more than 2 seconds, the current station will be stored.

The storing phase is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

## STORING THE LAST STATION LISTENED TO

The radio automatically stores the last station that was selected for each reception band, which is then tuned into when the radio is turned on or when the reception band is changed.

# **AUTOMATIC TUNING**

Briefly press the  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  button to start the automatic tuning search for the next station that can be received in the selected direction.

If the  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  button is pressed down longer, the fast search starts. When the button is released, the tuner will stop on the next station that can be received.

If the TA function (traffic alerts) is on, the tuner will only search for stations that broadcast traffic news and alerts.

# **MANUAL TUNING**

This is used to manually search for stations in the preselected band.

Select the desired frequency band and then press the  $\triangle$  or  $\bigtriangledown$  button briefly and repeatedly to start the search in the desired direction.

If the  $\triangle$  or  $\bigtriangledown$  buttons are pressed longer, the fast search will start and then stop when the button is released.

# EMERGENCY ALARM RECEPTION

The radio is configured to receive emergency alerts in RDS mode in exceptional circumstances or where dangerous situations are present (earthquakes, floods, etc.) if these are being transmitted by the current broadcaster.

This function is activated automatically and cannot be turned off. The word "Alarm" will be shown in the display during the transmission of an emergency announcement. The volume of the radio will change during this announcement in the same way as during a traffic bulletin.

## AUTOSTORE FUNCTION (automatic station storing)

To activate the AutoSTore function, hold the FM AS button down until an acoustic signal is heard. With this function, the radio automatically stores the 6 stations with the strongest signal in decreasing order on the FMA frequency band.

During the automatic storing process, the word "Autostore" flashes on the display.

Press the FM AS button again to interrupt the AutoSTore function: the radio will again tune into the station listened to before the activation of the function.

When the AutoSTore function has finished, the radio will automatically tune into the first preset station on the FMA band stored on the preset side 1.

The stations that have a strong signal in the preselected band at that moment, are then automatically stored on the buttons numbered from 1 to 6.

When the AutoSTore function is activated within the MW band, the FMA band is automatically selected and the function is performed there.

**Note** Sometimes the AutoSTore function is not able to find 6 stations with a strong signal. In this case, the strongest stations will be duplicated in the free preset buttons.

**Note** When the AutoSTore function is activated, the stations that were previously stored in the FMA band are deleted.

## EON FUNCTION (Enhanced Other Network)

In some countries, there are circuits that group multiple broadcasters that transmit traffic information together. In this case, the programme of the station that is being listened to will be temporarily interrupted to:

- □ receive traffic alerts (only with the TA function activated);
- □ listen to regional transmissions each time these are broadcast by one of the broadcasters on the same circuit.

# STEREOPHONIC BROADCASTERS

If the incoming signal is weak, playback is automatically switched from Stereo to Mono.

# CD PLAYER

# INTRODUCTION

This section describes the variants regarding the operation of the CD player: as far as the operation of the radio is concerned, refer to the description in the "Functions and Adjustments" chapter.

# **SELECTING THE CD PLAYER**

To activate the CD player built into the equipment, proceed as follows:

□ insert a CD with the equipment switched on: the first track will start to play;

or

□ if a CD has already been loaded, switch on the radio and then briefly press the CD button to select the "CD" operating mode: the last track listened to will start to play.

It is advisable to use original CDs to ensure optimum playback. If CD-R/RWs are used, we recommend using good quality media mastered at the slowest speed possible.

# LOADING/EJECTING A CD

To load the CD, insert it gently into the slot to activate the motorised loading system, which will position it correctly.

The CD can be loaded with radio off and the ignition key turned to MAR: in this case the radio will remain off. When the radio is turned on, the last source listened to prior to switching off will be activated.

When a CD is inserted the display will show the symbol "CD-IN" and the text "CD Reading". They will remain displayed for the entire time required for the radio to read the CD tracks. When this time has elapsed the radio will automatically start to play the first track.

Press the  $\blacktriangle$  button with the radio on to activate the motorised ejection of the CD. After ejection, the last audio source listened to before playing the CD will be heard.

If the CD is not removed from the radio, it will automatically be reloaded about 20 seconds later and the Tuner mode will be activated (Radio).

The CD cannot be ejected if the radio is off.

If the ejected CD is reloaded without having removed it completely from the slot, the radio will not switch to the CD source.

# Possible error messages

If the CD loaded cannot be read (e.g. a CD ROM has been inserted or the CD is inserted upside down or there is reading error) the display will show the text "CD Disc error".

The CD will then be ejected and the audio source activated prior to the CD mode selection will be heard.

With an external audio source activated ("TA", "ALARM" or "Phone"), the CD that cannot be read will not be ejected until these functions have ended. At the end, with the CD mode activated, the display will show the text "CD Disc error" for a few seconds and then the CD will be ejected.

# **DISPLAY INFORMATION**

When the CD player is working, the display will show the following information:

□ "CD Track 5": indicates the number of the CD track;

□ "03:42": indicates the time elapsed since the start of the track (if the relevant Menu function is activated).

# TRACK SELECTION (forward/back)

Briefly press the  $\triangleleft$  button to play the previous CD track and the  $\triangleright$  button to play the next track.

The tracks are selected cyclically: the first track is selected after the last track and vice versa.

If the track has been played for more than 3 seconds, pressing the  $\triangleleft$  button will cause the track to be started again from the beginning.

In this case, if you want to play the previous track, press the button twice consecutively.

# TRACK FAST FORWARD/REWIND

Hold down the  $\triangleright$  button to fast forward the selected track and hold down the  $\triangleleft$  button to fast rewind the track.

The fast forward/rewind will stop once the button is released.

# **PAUSE FUNCTION**

To pause the CD player, press the MUTE button. The text "CD Pause" appears on the display.

To resume listening to the track, press the button MUTE again. If another audio source is selected, the pause function is deactivated.

# SOUND-SYSTEM

# **MP3 CD PLAYER**

# INTRODUCTION

This section only describes the variants regarding the operation of the CD MP3 player: as far as the operation of the radio is concerned, refer to the description in the "Radio" and "CD MP3 Player" sections.

NOTE MPEG Layer-3 audio decoding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson multimedia.

# MP3 MODE

In addition to playing regular audio CDs, the radio is also able to play CD-ROMs on which audio files have been stored using the MP3 compression format. The radio operates as described in the "CD Player" section when an ordinary audio CD is inserted.

To guarantee optimal playback quality it is advisable to use good quality CDs mastered at the lowest speed possible.

The files on an MP3 CD are structured by folder, creating lists of all the folders containing MP3 tracks (folders and subfolders are all displayed on the same level); the folders that do not contain MP3 tracks cannot be selected. The operating conditions and specifications for playing MP3 files are as follows:

□ the CD-ROMs used should be burnt according to the ISO 9660 standard;

- □ the music files must have an ".mp3" extension: files with a different extension cannot be played;
- □ the following sampling frequencies can be played: 44.1 kHz, stereo (96 to 320 kbit/s) - 22.05 kHz, mono or stereo (32 to 80 kbit/s);

 $\Box$  tracks with a variable bit-rate can be reproduced.

**Note** The names of tracks must not contain the following characters: spaces, ' (apostrophes), ( and ) (open and close brackets). When burning an MP3 CD, make sure that the names of the files do not contain these characters; if they do, the radio will not be able to play the tracks involved.

# SELECTING MP3 SESSIONS ON HYBRID DISPLAY INFORMATION DISCS

If a hybrid disc is inserted (Mixed Mode, Enhanced, CD-Extra) also containing MP3 files, the radio automatically starts playing the audio session. It is possible to switch to the MP3 session whilst playing by holding the MEDIA button down for more than 2 seconds.

**Note** When the function is activated the radio may take a few seconds to start playing. Whilst checking the disc the display will show "CD READING". If no MP3 files are detected, the radio will resume playing the audio session from the point where it was interrupted.

## **ID3-TAG** information display

In addition to the information relating to the time elapsed, the name of the folder and the name of the file, the radio is also capable of displaying ID3-TAG information relating to the Track Title, Artist and Author.

The name of the MP3 folder shown on the display corresponds to the name with which the folder was stored on the CD, followed by an asterisk.

Example of a complete MP3 folder name: BEST OF \*.

When ID3-TAG data is chosen to be displayed (Title, Artist, Album) that has not been recorded for the track played, the information will be replaced by that relating to the name of the file.

# SELECTING NEXT/PREVIOUS FOLDER

Press the  $\triangle$  button to select one of the next folders or press the  $\bigtriangledown$  button to select a previous folder.

The display will show the number and the name of the folder (e.g. "DIR 2 XXXXXX").

XXXXXX: name of the folder (the display will only show the first 8 characters).

The folders are selected cyclically: the first folder is selected after the last folder and vice versa.

If no other folder/track is selected in the next 2 seconds, the first track on the new folder will be played.

If the last track in the folder at that moment selected is played, the next folder will be played.

# STRUCTURE OF THE FOLDERS

The radio with MP3 player:

□ recognises only the folders that contain MP3 format files;

□ if the MP3 files on a CD-ROM are structured in sub-folders, their structure is compressed to a single level structure where the sub-folders are taken to the level of the main folders.

# AUX (only with the Blue&Me<sup>™</sup> system)

(for versions/markets, where provided)

# INTRODUCTION

This section describes the variants regarding the operation of the AUX source: as far as the operation of the radio is concerned, refer to the description in the "Functions and Adjustments" section.

# AUX MODE

To activate the AUX source, press the MEDIA button or the SRC control on the steering wheel several times until the corresponding source is displayed.

## IMPORTANT

The functions of the device connected to the AUX socket are directly managed by the device itself; it is not possible to change track/tolder/playlist with radio or steering wheel controls.

Do not leave the cable of your portable player connected to the AUX socket after disconnection, to avoid possible hiss from the speakers.

NOTE The AUX socket is not incorporated in the radio. For its position, refer to the **Blue&Me**<sup>TM</sup> Supplement and its Quick Guide.

# TROUBLESHOOTING

## GENERAL

## Low volume

The Fader function should be adjusted only to the values "F" (front) to prevent a reduction in radio output power and the muting of the volume if the Fader level adjustment is equal to R+9.

## Source cannot be selected

Nothing has been inserted. Insert the CD or CD MP3 to be played.

# **CD PLAYER**

# The CD does not play

The CD is dirty. Clean the CD. The CD is scratched. Try and use another CD.

## The CD cannot be loaded

A CD is already loaded. Press the  $\blacktriangle$  button and remove the CD.

# **MP3 FILE READING**

## Track skips during MP3 file playback

The CD is scratched or dirty. Clean the CD, referring to the contents of the "CD" paragraph in the "Introduction" section.

# The duration of the MP3 tracks is not shown correctly

In some cases (due to the recording mode) the duration of the MP3 tracks may be displayed incorrectly.



# In the heart of your engine.



#### Oil change? The experts recommend Selenia

The engine of your car is factory filled with **Selenia.** This is an engine oil range which satisfies the most advanced international specifications. Its superior technical characteristics allow **Selenia** to guarantee the **highest performance and protection of your engine.** 

#### The Selenia range includes a number of technologically advanced products:

#### **SELENIA SPORT**

Fully synthetic lubricant capable of meeting the needs of high performance engines.

Studied to protect the engine also in high thermal stress conditions, it prevents deposits on the turbine to achieve the utmost performance in total safety.

#### **SELENIA WR PURE ENERGY**

Fully synthetic lubricant that can meet the requirements of the latest diesel engines.

Low ash content to protect the particulate filter from the residual products of combustion. High Fuel Economy System that allows considerable fuel saving. It reduces the danger of dirtying the turbine to ensure the protection of increasingly high performance diesel engines

#### **SELENIA STAR PURE ENERGY**

Synthetic lubricant designed for petrol engines that need products with a low ash content. It maximises the characteristics of engines with high specific power, protects the parts mostly subjected to stress and helps to keep modern catalysts clean.

#### **SELENIA RACING**

This lubricant has been developed as a result of Selenia's extensive experience in track and rally competitions, it maximises engine performance in all kinds of competition use.

The range also includes K Pure Energy, Selenia Digitech, Selenia Multipower, Selenia 20K, Selenia 20K AR. For further information on Selenia products visit the web site www.selenia.com

















GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR	
SAFETY	Å
$\longrightarrow$	Á
STARTING AND DRIVING	
IN AN EMERGENCY	
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE	ļ
	4
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS	

ABS system	96
- System intervention	96
Additional heater	61
AFS adaptive lights (Adaptive	
Frontlight System)	74
Air cleaner	192
Alarm	38
"Alfa DNA" system	99
- Driving modes	100
<ul> <li>Engagement/disengagement of "All Weather" mode</li> </ul>	
	101
<ul> <li>Engagement/disengagement of "Dynamic" mode</li> </ul>	100
- "Natural" Mode	100
Alfa Romeo Code system	32
Ashtray	80
ASR system (AntiSlip Regulation)	98
Automatic dual zone climate control	55
Battery	192
– advice for extending lifetime	192
- replacement	192
Battery (recharging)	173
Body versions	204
Bodywork	

INDEX

– bodywork codes	204
– maintenance	199
<ul> <li>protection against atmospheric</li> </ul>	
agents	198
- warranty	198
Bonnet	93
– Closing	93
- Opening	93
Brake Assist	98
Brakes	212
– brake fluid level	191
bulb replacement 158-159	-160
– interior lights	162
Bulb replacement	
– exterior lights	157
Bulbs	
- types of bulbs	155
Carrying children safely	121
CBC (Cornering Brake Control) system	98
Central locking	74
Changing a bulb	154
- General instructions	154
Changing a wheel	143
	79
Cigar lighter	19
Cleaning and maintenance	

)4	– bodywork	198
9	- car interior	200
	– engine compartment	200
8	- front headlights	199
8	– leather parts	201
3	– leather seats	201
3	– plastic and coated parts	201
3	- seats and fabric parts	200
8	- windows	199
2	Climate control	48
2	– Central air diffusers	48
0	– Rear air diffuser	49
2	– Side air diffusers	48
	– Upper air diffusers	48
7	Climatic comfort	50
	– Diffusers	50
5	Clutch	211
21	CO2 emissions	231
8	Code Card	33
'4	Control buttons	21
54	Control panel and instruments	4
54	– Multifunction display	4
3	<ul> <li>Reconfigurable multifunction</li> </ul>	_
'9	display	5
'	Controls	73

INDEX

Courtesy light	
– bulb replacement	164
Cruise Control	68
Dashboard	3
Daytime running lights (DRL)	62
Diesel filter	192
Dimensions	220
Dipped headlights	
– bulb replacement	158
Direction indicators 64-	-159
– bulb replacement	158
– "Lane change" function	64
Display	18
Doors	83
– Child safety device	84
– Door central locking/unlocking	83
DST system	99
(Dynamic Steering Torque)	107
Dual Pinion active steering	63
Dusk sensor	
Electric sun roof	81
Electric windows	86
– Controls	86
"Electronic Q2" system ("E-Q2")	98
Engine codes	204

Engine compartment – checking levels – washing Engine coolant temperature gauge	185 200 6
Engine	
– engine cooling system fluid level	190
- identification codes	204
– marking	203
- technical specifications	206
Engine oil	
- consumption	190
– level check	190
EOBD system	106
ESC (Electronic Stability Control)	100
system	97
Exterior lights	62
– Left stalk	62
External courtesy lights	65
Extinguisher	80
<b>F</b> itting "Universal" child seat	122
Fix&Go Automatic Kit	149
Flashing	64
Fluids and lubricants (specifications)	227
· · ·	
Fog lights	
"Follow Me Home" device	64

Front airbags	129	
Front armrest	77	GETTING TO KNOW
Front driver side airbag	129	YOUR CAR
Front passenger airbag	130	
Front roof light		
- bulb replacement	162	SAFFTY
Fuel consumption	230	***
Fuel cut-off system	75	<u> </u>
Fuel level gauge	6	STARTING AND
Fuel supply	210	DRIVING AND
Fuel tank cap	112	
Fuses (if a fuse blows)	165	<u> </u>
Gear Shift Indicator	20	IN AN EMERGENCY
Glove compartment light		
- bulb replacement	164	
	135	(
Hazard warning lights	73	SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE
Headlights	95	MAINTENANCE
- Adjusting headlights abroad	95	≻
- bulb replacement	157	TECHNICAL
- Headlight alignment corrector	95	SPECIFICATIONS
– Light beam direction	95	
Headlight washers	198	
Head restraints	44	INDEX
- "Anti-Whiplash" device	44	

283

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR	– Front hea – Rear hea Hill Holder s
SAFETY	dentificatio – bodywor – Chassis n – engine m
STARTING AND DRIVING	– identifica Ignition devi – Steering Installation c
IN AN EMERGENCY	devices Installing a U Interior fitting Interiors (cle
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE	Jack Light cluster
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS	– front ligh (changing – rear light (changing Lubricants (fe
INDEX	Luggage con – Bag hool – Closina t

- Front headrests	44
- Rear head restraints	4
ll Holder system	97
lentification data	
- bodywork paint plate	203
- Chassis marking	203
- engine marking	203
- identification data plate	202
nition device	40
- Steering lock	40
stallation of electrical/electronic	1.07
	108
stalling a Universal Isofix child seat	127
erior fittings	76
eriors (cleaning)	200
ack	144
ight clusters	
- front light clusters (changing a bulb)	
(changing a bulb)	157
- rear light clusters (changing a bulb)	159
(changing a boib)	227
bricants (features)	88
ggage compartment	00 92
- Bag hooks	94 89
- Closing the luggage compartment	07

<ul> <li>Emergency luggage compartment opening</li> </ul>	89
– Extending the luggage	00
compartment	89
<ul> <li>Luggage compartment initialisation</li> </ul>	89
– Luggage retaining net	92
<ul> <li>Opening the luggage compartment</li> </ul>	88
– Securing your load	92
Luggage compartment roof light	
- bulb replacement	163
Main beam headlights	64
– bulb replacement	157
Maintenance and care	
– heavy-duty use of the car	184
– periodic checks	184
- scheduled servicing	177
- scheduled servicing plan	178
Manual climate control	51
Menu options	22
MSR system	98
Multifunction display	18
Number plate lights	
- bulb replacement	161
Parking	135
v	

	– Handbrake	135
9	Parking lights	63
9	Parking sensors	109
9	Performance	221
9	Plugs (type)	206
2	Pollen filter	192
	Power socket	79
8	Preparation for "Isofix" child seat	126
2	Preparation to install a portable	108
	navigation system Pretensioners	118
3	- Load limiters	118
4		110
7	Protecting the environment - Particulate filter (DPF)	114
	<b>R</b> AB system (Ready Alert Brakes)	99
4	Radio transmitters and mobile phones	109
4	Rain sensor	66
7	Raising the car	174
8	Rear armrest	78
1	Rear fog lights	73
2	Rear fog lights/reversing lights	160
8	Rear roof light	
8	– bulb replacement	162
	Rear view mirrors	46
1	– Door mirrors	47
5	– Internal mirror	46

Rear window washer jets	197
Rear window washer	
– rear window washer fluid level	191
Rear window washer/wiper	67
Rear Window Wiper	
– blade replacement	197
– blades	195
Reconfigurable multifunction display	19
Refuelling	224
Refuelling the car	112
Rev counter	6
Rim Protector	217
Roof lights	70
- Courtesy lights	71
- Front roof light	70
– Glove compartment light	72
– Luggage compartment roof light	72
– Rear roof light	71
Roof rack/ski rack	94
Safe Lock device	36
Saving fuel	137
SBR system (Seat Belt Reminder)	116
Scheduled Servicing Plan	178
Seat belts	115
– Use	115

Seats – Front seats Setup menu Side airbags (Side Bags - Window Bags) Side bags (front side airbags) Side lights/brake lights	41 41 21 131 131 159
Side lights/daytime running lights (DRL)	
– bulb replacement Side lights/dipped beam headlights Ski compartment	157 63 78
"Smart Bag" system (Multistage front airbags)	129
Snow chains	140
Snow tyres	140
Speedometer (speed indicator)	6
Starting the engine	134
Starting the engine	142
– Bump starting	143
– Jump starting	142
Start&Stop system	103
Steering lock	40
Steering system	214
Steering wheel	45
Storage compartments	76

Storing the car		141
Sun visors		80
Suspension		213
Symbols		32
Technical specifications		202
The keys		33
– Code Card		33
– Key without remote control		34
– Key with remote control		34
Third brake lights		
– bulb replacement		161
Towing the car		175
- Attaching the tow hook		175
Towing trailers		139
- Installing a tow hook		139
Transmission		211
TRIP button		31
Trip Computer		29
Tyres		
– Fix&Go Automatic (kit)		149
– inflation pressure		219
– reading the tyre code		215
– Rim Protector tyres		217
-		218
- snow tyres		
– tyres provided	•••	218

SAFETY STARTING AND DRIVING IN AN EMERGENCY

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR

MAINTENANCE

SERVICING AND

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR CAR	Tyres - maintenance Using the Gearbox Warning lights on panel		Window cleaning Windows (cleaning) Windscreen washer – windscreen washer fluid level	. 199 . 191 . 197 . 65
SAFETY	Weights Welcome movement Wheel rims – correct reading of the rim code	20	Windscreen washer sprays Windscreen washer/wiper – "Smart washing" function Windscreen wiper	
STARTING AND DRIVING	<ul> <li>dimensions</li> <li>Rim Protector</li> <li>rims and tyres</li> <li>wheels and tyres</li> </ul>	217 215	<ul> <li>blades</li> <li>replacing wiper blades</li> <li>Wiring for radio system</li> </ul>	196
IN AN EMERGENCY	Wheels and tyres – changing a wheel – Fix&Go Automatic (kit)	149		
SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE	<ul> <li>spare wheel</li> <li>tyre inflation pressure</li> <li>Wheels and tyres</li> <li>Window bags (side airbags for head protection)</li> </ul>	219 194		
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS	•			

RO	PAR
	TECHN
	Largo S
	Eint Cro

#### TS&SERVICES

TECHNICAL SERVICES - SERVICE ENGINEERING Largo Senatore G. Agnelli, 3 - 10040 Volvera - Torino (Italy) Fiat Group Automobiles S.p.A. Print no. 60438492 - 1 Edition - 10/2012 All rights reserved. Reproduction, even partial, is prohibited without written authorisation from Fiat Group Automobiles S.p.A.

INDEX

S	E	R	٧	c	Е	

# •••• • S A F E T Y ••••

 $\triangle$  The bonnet, the bumper and the headlamps of this vehicle have been developed as integral part of the passive safety systems of your car to ensure an optimum protection to pedestrians and to all passengers. For this, in case of replacement, be sure to choose genuine parts of the bodywork which are specifically developed for your car.



